#### LD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATIC International Bureau



### INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>5</sup>: C07C 217/74, A61K 31/135 C07C 215/64, 229/46, C07D 213/61 C07D 317/58, 271/12

A1

(11) International Publication Number:

WO 93/15041

(43) International Publication Date:

5 August 1993 (05.08.93)

(21) International Application Number:

PCT/JP93/00113

(22) International Filing Date:

1 February 1993 (01.02.93)

(30) Priority data:

9202236.7 9217991.0 3 February 1992 (03.02.92) GB 24 August 1992 (24.08.92) GB

GB | GB |

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): FUJISAWA PHARMACEUTICAL CO., LTD. [JP/JP]; 4-7, Doshomachi 3-chome, Chuo-ku, Osaka-shi, Osaka 541 (JP).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): SHIOKAWA, Youichi [JP/JP]; 9-814, Hozumidai, Ibaraki-shi, Osaka 567 (JP). NAGANO, Masanobu [JP/JP]; 4-6-19, Midoridai, Kawanishi-shi, Hyogo 666-01 (JP). TANIGUCHI, Kiyoshi [JP/JP]; 2-1-28, Minamiochiai, Suma-ku, Kobe-shi, Hyogo 654-01 (JP). TAKE, Kazuhiko [JP/JP]; 3-3-2-201, Kouyoudai, Tondabayashi-shi, Osaka 584 (JP). KATO, Takeshi [JP/JP]; 12-27-302, Ooyacho, Nishinomiya-shi, Hyogo 663 (JP). TSUBAKI, Kazunori [JP/JP]; 3-21-3-108, Yamadanishi, Suita-shi, Osaka 565 (JP).

(74) Agent: SEKI, Hideo; Fujisawa Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd., Osaka Factory, 1-6, Kashima 2-chome, Yodogawa-ku, Osaka-shi, Osaka 532 (JP).

(81) Designated States: AU, CA, HU, JP, KR, RU, UA, US, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).

Published

With international search report.

(54) Title: ETHANOLAMINE DERIVATIVES HAVING SYMPATHOMIMETIC AND ANTI-POLLAKIURIA ACTIVITIES

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{p}$$

$$(I)$$

### (57) Abstract

This invention relates to new ethanolamine derivatives having gut selective sympathomimetic and anti-pollakiuria activities and represented by general formula (I) wherein R<sup>1</sup> is aryl or a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with halogen, etc., R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, lower alkyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkenyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkoxy optionally substituted with acyl, or amino optionally substituted with acyl(lower)alkyl, R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, an N-protective group, or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio, n is an integer of 0 to 3, and a heavy solid line means a single bond or a double bond, provided that when n is 1, then 1) R<sup>1</sup> is a condensed aromatic hydrocarbon group or a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with halogen, etc., and the like, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof to processes for the preparation thereof and to a pharmaceutical composition comprising the same.

# FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	FR	France	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GB	United Kingdom	NL	Netherlands
		GN	Guinea	NO	Norway
BE	Belgium Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	NZ	New Zealand
BF		HU	Hungary	PL	Poland
BG	Bulgaria	1E	tretand	PT	Portugal
BJ	Benin	.11	Italy	RO	Romania
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	RU	Russian Federation
. CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	K.	of Korea	SE	Sweden
CC	('ongo	20	Republic of Korea	SK	Slovak Republic
CH	Switzerland	KR	Kazakhstan	SN ·	Senegal
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KZ.	Liechtenstein	SU	Soviet Union
CM	Cameroon	1.1		TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LK	Sri Lanka	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	1.0	Luxembourg	UA	Ukraine
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	บร	United States of America
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	VN	Viet Nam
ES	Spain	ML.	Mali	VIX	VIGI INGIII
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia		

20

25

#### DESCRIPTION

Ethanolamine derivatives having sympathomimetic and anti-pollakiuria activities

5 TECHNICAL FIELD

This invention relates to new ethanolamine derivatives and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof which are useful as a medicament.

10 BACKGROUND ART

Some ethanolamine derivatives having spasmolytic activity and relaxing activity on smooth muscle contraction have known as described, for example, in European Patent Application Publication Nos. 0 211 721, 0 255 415 and 0 383 686.

### DISCLOSURE OF INVENTION

This invention relates to new ethanolamine derivatives and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

More particularly, it relates to new ethanolamine derivatives and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof which have gut selective sympathomimetic and anti-pollakiuria activities, to processes for the preparation thereof, to a pharmaceutical composition comprising the same and to a method of using the same therapeutically in the treatment and/or prevention of gastro-intestinal disorders caused by smooth muscle contractions in human beings or animals, and more particularly to a method for the treatment and/or prevention of spasm or hyperanakinesia in case of irritable bowel syndrome, gastritis, gastric ulcer, duodenal ulcer, enteritis, cholecystopathy, cholangitis, urinary calculus and the like; and for the treatment and/or prevention of dysuria such as pollakiuria, urinary

35.

incontinence or the like in case of nervous pollakiuria, neurogenic bladder dysfunction, nocturia, unstable bladder, cystospasm, chronic cystitis, chronic prostatitis or the like. Additionally, the object compound is expected to be useful as therapeutical and/or preventive agents for obesity and glaucoma.

One object of this invention is to provide new and useful ethanolamine derivatives and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof which have gut selective sympathomimetic and anti-pollakiuria activities.

Another object of this invention is to provide processes for the preparation of said ethanolamine derivatives and salts thereof.

A further object of this invention is to provide a pharmaceutical composition comprising, as an active ingredient, said ethanolamine derivatives and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Still further object of this invention is to provide a therapeutical method for the treatment and/or prevention of aforesaid diseases in human beings or animals, using said ethanolamine derivatives and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The object ethanolamine derivatives of this invention are new and can be represented by the following general formula [I]:

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$
(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>

35

5

10

15

10

wherein	$R^1$	is	aryl	or	a	heterocy	clic	grou	p, ea	ch of	which
			may	be	sul	ostituted	with	hal	ogen,	hydr	оху,
			prot	ect	ed	hydroxy,	aryl	.oxy,	lowe	r alk	oxy,
			halo	(10	wei	r)alkoxy,	nitr	o, c	yano,	amin	o or
			acvl	ami	no.	_					

- R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, lower alkyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkenyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkoxy optionally substituted with acyl, or amino optionally substituted with acyl(lower)alkyl,
- R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, an N-protective group, or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio,
- n is an integer of 0 to 3, and a heavy solid line means a single bond or a double bond,

provided that when n is 1, then

- 1) R<sup>1</sup> is a condensed aromatic hydrocarbon group or a
  20 heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted
  with halogen, hydroxy, protected hydroxy, aryloxy,
  lower alkoxy, halo(lower)alkoxy, nitro, cyano, amino or
  acylamino, or
- 2) R<sup>2</sup> is halogen, nitro, lower alkyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkenyl optionally substituted with acyl, or amino optionally substituted with acyl(lower)alkyl, or
  - 3)  $R^3$  is an N-protective group or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio, or
- 4) a heavy solid line means a double bond, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The object compound [I] or its salt can be prepared by the following processes.

# Process 1

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2} + HN - R^{2}$$

[III] or its salt

15 [I] or its salt

# Process 2

OH 
$$R^3$$

$$R^1-CH-CH_2-N$$

$$(CH_2)_n$$

25 [Ia] or its salt

$$\frac{\text{deesterification}}{30} \xrightarrow{\text{QH}} R^{1} - \text{CH} - \text{CH}_{2} - \text{N} \xrightarrow{\text{(CH}_{2})_{n}} R^{2}_{k}$$

[Ib]
or its salt

### Process 3

5 
$$R^{1}$$
-CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-N  $(CH_{2})_{n}$  OH  $(CH_{2})_{n}$ 

[Ic] or its salt

$$R^{1}$$
-CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-N- $R_{c}^{2}$ 

15

10

[Id]
or its salt

### Process 4

OH 
$$R^3$$

$$R^1-CH-CH_2-N$$

$$(CH_2)_n$$
amidation

25 [Ib]

or its reactive derivative

at the carboxy group

or a salt thereof

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$

[Ie] or its salt

# Process 5

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-NH_{2} + (CH_{2})_{n}$$

[V]
or its salt

[VI]
or its salt

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{OH} \\
\mathbb{R}^{1}-\text{CH}-\text{CH}_{2}-\text{NH}-
\end{array}$$

15

[If]
or its salt

### Process 6

20

25

$$R^{1}$$
-CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-N  $(CH_{2})_{n}$  reduction

[Ig] or its salt

30 OH 
$$R^3$$
  $NH_2$   $CH_2$   $N$ 

35 (Ih) or its salt

15

# Process 7

[VII]

[III] or its salt

$$R^{1}$$
-CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-N-R<sup>2</sup>

[I] or its salt

Process 8 20

$$R^{1}$$
-CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-N-R<sup>3</sup> (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>

elimination of the N-protective group

[Ii] or its salt

30

25

[Ij] 35 or its salt

	wherein	R <sup>1</sup> , R	$^{2}$ , $^{3}$ , n and a heavy solid line are each as
		_	defined above,
		$R_a^2$ is	lower alkyl substituted with esterified
			carboxy, lower alkenyl substituted with
5			esterified carboxy, lower alkoxy substituted
			with esterified carboxy, or amino
			substituted with esterified
		2	carboxy(lower)alkyl,
		R <sub>b</sub> is	lower alkyl substituted with carboxy, lower
10			alkenyl substituted with carboxy, lower
			alkoxy substituted with carboxy, or amino
		3	substituted with carboxy(lower)alkyl,
		R <sub>a</sub> is	an N-protective group or lower alkyl
		2	optionally substituted with lower alkylthio,
15		R <sub>c</sub> is	lower alkoxy optionally substituted with
		_ 4 .	acyl,
		R is	lower alkyl optionally substituted with
			acyl,
20			acid residue,
20		R <sub>d</sub> is	lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy,
			each of which is substituted with carbamoyl
			optionally substituted with lower alkyl,
			lower alkoxy(lower)alkyl, arylsulfonyl,
25			lower alkylsulfonyl or a heterocyclic group,
			or amino substituted with
			carbamoyl(lower)alkyl, carbamoyl in which
			may be substituted with lower alkyl, lower alkoxy(lower)alkyl, arylsulfonyl, lower
			alkylsulfonyl or a heterocyclic group, and
30		$R_h^3$ is	an N-protective group.
		מ	

In the above and subsequent description of the present specification, suitable examples of the various definition to be included within the scope of the invention are explained in detail in the following.

The term "lower" is intended to mean a group having 1 to 6 carbon atom(s), unless otherwise provided.

Suitable "halogen" and halo in the term "halo(lower)-alkoxy" may be fluorine, chlorine, bromine, and iodine, in which preferable one is chlorine or bromine.

Suitable "lower alkyl" and lower alkyl moiety in the terms "acyl(lower)alkyl" and "lower alkylthio" may be a straight or branched one such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, hexyl or the like, in which preferable one is methyl or ethyl.

Suitable "lower alkenyl" may be a straight or branched one such as ethenyl, propenyl, pentenyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, hexenyl or the like, in which preferable one is ethenyl.

Suitable "lower alkoxy" and lower alkoxy in the term "halo(lower)alkoxy" may a straight or branched one such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, pentyloxy or the like, in which preferable one is methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy or pentyloxy.

Suitable "protected hydroxy" may be substituted lower alkoxy such as lower alkoxy(lower)alkoxy [e.g. methoxymethoxy, etc.], lower alkoxy(lower)alkoxy [e.g. methoxyethoxymethoxy, etc.], substituted or 25 unsubstituted ar(lower)alkoxy [e.g. benzyloxy, nitrobenzyloxy, etc.], etc., acyloxy such as lower alkanoyloxy [e.g. acetoxy, propionyloxy, pivaloyloxy, etc.], aroyloxy [e.g. benzoyloxy, fluorenecarbonyloxy, etc.], lower alkoxycarbonyloxy [e.g. methoxycarbonyloxy, ethoxycarbonyloxy, propoxycarbonyloxy, 30 isopropoxycarbonyloxy, butoxycarbonyloxy, isobutoxycarbonyloxy, tert-butoxycarbonyloxy, pentyloxycarbonyloxy, hexyloxycarbonyloxy, etc.], substituted or unsubstituted ar(lower)alkoxycarbonyloxy [e.g. benzyloxycarbonyloxy, bromobenzyloxycarbonyloxy, etc.] etc., tri(lower)-35

5

10

15

alkylsilyloxy [e.g. trimethylsilyloxy, etc.] and the like.

Suitable "aryl" and aryl moiety in the terms

"aryloxy" and "arylsulfonyl" may be uncondensed or

condensed aromatic hydrocarbon group such as phenyl,

naphthyl, phenyl substituted with lower alkyl [e.g. tolyl,

xylyl, mesityl, cumenyl, di(tert-butyl)phenyl, etc.],

indenyl, indanyl or the like, in which preferable one is

phenyl, naphthyl or indanyl.

Suitable "heterocyclic group" may be one containing 10 at least one hetero atom selected from nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atom, and may include saturated or unsaturated. monocyclic or polycyclic heterocyclic group, and preferable heterocyclic group may be N-containing heterocyclic group such as unsaturated 3 to 6 membered 15 heteromonocyclic group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atoms, for example, pyrrolyl, pyrrolinyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyridazinyl, triazolyl [e.g. 4H-1,2,4-triazolyl, 1H-1,2,3-triazolyl, 2H-1,2,3-triazolyl, etc.], tetrazolyl [e.g. 1H-tetrazolyl, 20 2H-tetrazolyl, etc.], etc.; saturated 3 to 6-membered heteromonocyclic group containing 1 to 4 nitrogen atoms [e.g. pyrrolidiny], imidazolidinyl, piperidino, piperazinyl, etc.]; unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group containing 1 to 5 25 nitrogen atoms, for example, indolyl, isoindolyl, indolizinyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolyl, isoquinolyl, indazolyl, benzotriazolyl, tetrazolopyridazinyl [e.g. tetrazolo[1,5-b]pyridazinyl, etc.], etc.; unsaturated 3 to 6-membered heteromonocyclic group 30 containing an oxygen atom, for example, pyranyl, furyl, etc.; unsaturated, 3 to 6-membered heteromonocyclic group containing 1 to 2 sulfur atoms, for example, thienyl, etc.;

unsaturated 3 to 6-membered heteromonocyclic group

containing 1 to 2 oxygen atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms, for example, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxadiazolyl [e.g. 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,5-oxadiazolyl, etc.], etc.;

- saturated 3 to 6-membered heteromonocyclic group containing 1 to 2 oxygen atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms [e.g. morpholinyl, etc.]; unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group containing 1 to 2 oxygen atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms [e.g.
- benzofurazanyl, benzoxazolyl, benzoxadiazolyl, etc.];
  unsaturated 3 to 6-membered heteromonocyclic group
  containing 1 to 2 sulfur atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms,
  for example, thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl [e.g.,
  1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl,
- 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl, etc.], etc.;
  saturated 3 to 6-membered heteromonocyclic group
  containing 1 to 2 sulfur atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms
  [e.g., thiazolidinyl, etc.];
- unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group containing 1 to 2 sulfur atoms and 1 to 3 nitrogen atoms [e.g., benzothiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, etc.]; unsaturated condensed heterocyclic group containing 1 to 2 oxygen atoms [e.g. benzofuranyl, benzodioxolyl, etc.] and the like.
- 25 Preferable one in said heterocyclic group is pyridyl, benzofurazanyl or benzodioxolyl.

Suitable "acyl" and acyl moiety in the terms

"acylamino" and "acyl(lower)alkyl" may be carboxy;

esterified carboxy; carbamoyl optionally substituted with

lower alkyl, lower alkoxy(lower)alkyl, arylsulfonyl, lower

alkylsulfonyl or a heterocyclic group; lower alkanoyl;

aroyl; a heterocycliccarbonyl and the like.

The esterified carboxy may be substituted or unsubstituted lower alkoxycarbonyl [e.g. methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl,

10

15

hexyloxycarbonyl, 2-iodoethoxycarbonyl,
2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl, etc.], substituted or
unsubstituted aryloxycarbonyl [e.g. phenoxycarbonyl,
4-nitrophenoxycarbonyl, 2-naphthyloxycarbonyl, etc.],
substituted or unsubstituted ar(lower)alkoxycarbonyl [e.g.
benzyloxycarbonyl, phenethyloxycarbonyl,
benzhydryloxycarbonyl, 4-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, etc.] and
the like, in which preferable one is lower alkoxycarbonyl.

The carbamoyl substituted with lower alkyl may be methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl, propylcarbamoyl, dimethylcarbamoyl, diethylcarbamoyl, N-methyl-N-ethylcarbamoyl and the like.

The carbamoyl substituted with lower alkoxy(lower)alkyl may be methoxymethylcarbamoyl, methoxyethylcarbamoyl, ethoxymethylcarbamoyl, ethoxyethylcarbamoyl and the like, in which preferable one is methoxyethylcarbamoyl.

20

- to be continued on the next page -

25

30

15

The carbamoyl substituted with arylsulfonyl may be phenylsulfonylcarbamoyl, tolylsulfonylcarbamoyl and the like.

The carbamoyl substituted with lower alkylsulfonyl may be methylsulfonylcarbamoyl, ethylsulfonylcarbamoyl and the like.

The carbamoyl substituted with a heterocyclic group may be one substituted with a heterocyclic group as mentioned above.

The lower alkanoyl may be substituted or unsubstituted one such as formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl, valeryl, isovaleryl, pivaloyl, hexanoyl, trifluoroacetyl or the like, in which preferable one is acetyl, propionyl, butyryl or pivaloyl.

The aroyl may be benzoyl, naphthoyl, toluoyl, di(tert-butyl)benzoyl and the like.

The heterocyclic moiety in the term "a heterocyclic-carbonyl" may be one mentioned above as a heterocyclic group.

Suitable "N-protective group" may be substituted or unsubstituted lower alkanoyl [e.g. formyl, acetyl, propionyl, trifluoroacetyl, etc.], phthaloyl, lower alkoxycarbonyl [e.g. tert-butoxycarbonyl, tert-amyloxy-carbonyl, etc.], substituted or unsubstituted

aralkyloxycarbonyl [e.g. benzyloxycarbonyl, p-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl, etc.], substituted or unsubstituted arenesulfonyl [e.g. benzenesulfonyl, tosyl, etc.], nitrophenylsulfenyl, aralkyl [e.g. trityl, benzyl, etc.] or the like, in which preferable one is benzyl.

Suitable "acid residue" may be halogen [e.g. fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo], arenesulfonyloxy [e.g. benzenesulfonyloxy, tosyloxy, etc.], alkanesulfonyloxy [e.g. mesyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, etc.], and the like, in which preferable one is halogen.

Preferable compound [I] is one which has phenyl

10

15

20

optionally substituted with halogen for  $R^1$ , lower alkoxy substituted with carboxy or esterified carboxy for  $R^2$ , hydrogen for  $R^3$ , 0, 2 or 3 for n, and a single bond for a heavy solid line.

More preferable compound [I] is one which has phenyl substituted with halogen for  $R^1$ , methoxy substituted with esterified carboxy (more preferably lower alkoxycarbonyl) for  $R^2$ , hydrogen for  $R^3$ , 0, 2 or 3 for n, and a single bond for a heavy solid line.

Most preferable compound [I] is one which has phenyl substituted with halogen for  $\mathbb{R}^1$ , methoxy substituted with lower alkoxycarbonyl for  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , hydrogen for  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , 2 for n, and a single bond for a heavy solid line.

Suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the object compound [I] are conventional non-toxic salts such as an inorganic acid addition salt [e.g. hydrochloride, hydrobromide, sulfate, phosphate, etc.], an organic acid addition salt [e.g. formate, acetate, trifluoroacetate, oxalate, maleate, fumarate, tartrate, methanesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, toluenesulfonate, etc.], an alkali metal salt [e.g. sodium salt, potassium salt, etc.] or the like.

The processes for preparing the object compound [I] is explained in detail in the following.

25

35

### Process 1

The object compound [I] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [II] with a compound [III] or its salt.

30 Suitable salt of the compound [III] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

The reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a base such as an alkali metal carbonate [e.g. sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc.], an alkaline earth metal carbonate [e.g. magnesium carbonate, calcium

10

carbonate, etc.], an alkali metal bicarbonate [e.g. sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, etc.], tri(lower)alkylamine [e.g. trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc.], picoline or the like.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent, such as an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, etc.], diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction can be carried out under cooling to heating.

### Process 2

The object compound [Ib] or its salt can be prepared by subjecting a compound [Ia] or its salt to deesterification reaction.

Suitable salt of the compound [Ia] may be an inorganic or organic acid addition salt as exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable salt of the compound [Ib] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

The reaction is carried out in accordance with a conventional method such as hydrolysis, reduction or the like.

The hydrolysis is preferably carried out in the presence of a base or an acid including Lewis acid. Suitable base may include an inorganic base and an organic base such as an alkali metal [e.g. lithium, sodium, potassium, etc.], an alkaline earth metal [e.g. magnesium,

calcium, etc.], the hydroxide or carbonate or bicarbonate thereof, trialkylamine [e.g. trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc.], picoline, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-non-5-ene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene, or the like. Suitable

acid may include an organic acid [e.g. formic acid, acetic

10

15

30

acid, propionic acid, trichloroacetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.], an inorganic acid [e.g. hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydroiodic acid, sulfuric acid, etc.] and Lewis acid [e.g. boron tribromide, etc.].

The reaction is usually carried out in a solvent such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.], xylene, diethylene glycol monomethyl ether, methylene chloride, tetrahydrofuran, a mixture thereof or any other solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction. A liquid base or acid can be also used as the solvent. The reaction temperature is not critical and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to heating.

The reduction can be applied preferably for elimination of the ester moiety such as 4-nitrobenzyl, 2-iodoethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl, or the like. The reduction method applicable for the elimination reaction may include chemical reduction and catalytic reduction.

reduction are a combination of metal [e.g. tin, zinc, iron, etc.] or metallic compound [e.g. chromium chloride, chromium acetate, etc.] and an organic or inorganic acid [e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.].

Suitable catalysts to be used in catalytic reduction are conventional ones such as platinum catalyst [e.g. platinum plate, spongy platinum, platinum black, colloidal platinum, platinum oxide, platinum wire, etc.], palladium catalyst [e.g. spongy palladium, palladium black, palladium oxide, palladium on carbon, colloidal palladium, palladium on barium sulfate, palladium on barium carbonate, etc.], nickel catalyst [e.g. reduced nickel, nickel oxide, Raney nickel, etc.], cobalt catalyst [e.g. reduced cobalt, Raney cobalt, etc.], iron catalyst [e.g.

10

15

20

reduced iron, Raney iron, etc.], copper catalyst [e.g. reduced copper, Raney copper, Ullman copper, etc.] or the like.

The reduction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.], N,N-dimethylformamide, or a mixture thereof. Additionally, in case that the above-mentioned acids to be used in chemical reduction are in liquid, they can also be used as a solvent. Further, a suitable solvent to be used in catalytic reduction may be the above-mentioned solvent, and other conventional solvent such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc., or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature of this reaction is not critical and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to warming.

In this reaction, in case that the compound [Ia] having an N-protective group for R<sup>3</sup> and/or a double bond for a heavy solid line is used as a starting compound, the compound [Ib] having hydrogen for R<sup>3</sup> and/or a single bond for a heavy solid line may be obtained according to reaction conditions. This case is included within the scope of the present reaction.

25

## Process 3

The object compound [Id] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [Ic] or its salt with a compound [IV].

Suitable salts of the compounds [Ic] and [Id] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

When the compound [IV] having halogen for X is used in this reaction, the reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a base such as alkali metal [e.g.

lithium, sodium, potassium, etc.], the hydroxide or

10

15

25

30

35

carbonate or bicarbonate, thereof [e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium carbonate, potassium bicarbonate, etc.], alkaline earth metal [e.g. calcium, magnesium, etc.], alkali metal hydride [e.g. sodium hydride, etc.], alkaline earth metal hydride [e.g. calcium hydride, etc.], alkali metal alkoxide [e.g. sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide, etc.], alkaline earth metal alkoxide [e.g. magnesium methoxide, magnesium ethoxide, etc.] or the like, or alkali metal iodide [e.g. sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc.] and said base.

This reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, N,N-dimethylformamide, acetone, a mixture thereof, or any other solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction. Additionally, in case that the compound [IV] is in liquid, it can also be used as a solvent.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to heating.

### 20 Process 4

The object compound [Ie] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [Ib] or its reactive derivative at the carboxy group or a salt thereof with an amine.

Suitable salts of the compounds [Ie] and [Ib] and its reactive derivative at the carboxy group may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable amine may be ammonia, arenesulfonamide, amine substituted with a heterocyclic group.

The arenesulfonamide may be benzenesulfonamide, methylbenzenesulfonamide, ethylbenzenesulfonamide, naphthalenesulfonamide and the like, in which preferable one is methylbenzenesulfonamide.

The amine substituted with a heterocyclic group may be one substituted with a heterocyclic group as mentioned above such as aminothiazole, aminothiadiazole,

10

15

20

25

aminotriazole, aminotetrazole or the like, in which preferable one is aminotetrazole.

Suitable reaction derivative at the carboxy group of the compound [Ib] may include an ester, an acid halide, an acid anhydride and the like. The suitable examples of the reactive derivatives may be an acid halide [e.g. acid chloride, acid bromide, etc.]; a symmetrical acid anhydride; a mixed acid anhydride with 1,1'-carbonyl diimidazole or an acid such as aliphatic carboxylic acid [e.g. acetic acid, pivalic acid, etc.], substituted phosphoric acid [e.g. dialkylphosphoric acid, diphenylphosphoric acid, etc.]; an ester such as lower alkyl ester [e.g. methyl ester, ethyl ester, propyl ester, hexyl ester, etc.], substituted or unsubstituted ar(lower)alkyl ester [e.g. benzyl ester, benzhydryl ester, p-chlorobenzyl ester, etc.], substituted or unsubstituted aryl ester [e.g. phenyl ester, tolyl ester, 4-nitrophenyl ester, 2,4-dinitrophenyl ester, pentachlorophenyl ester, naphthyl ester, etc.], or an ester with N,N-dimethylhydroxylamine, N-hydroxysuccinimide, N-hydroxyphthalimide or

1-hydroxy-6-chloro-1H-benzotriazole, or the like.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as water, acetone, dioxane, chloroform, methylene chloride, ethylene chloride, tetrahydrofuran, ethyl acetate, N,N-dimethylformamide, pyridine or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction. Among these solvents, hydrophilic solvents may be used in a mixture with water.

30 When the compound [Ib] is used in a free acid from in the reaction, the reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a conventional condensing agent such as N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, N-cyclohexyl-N'-morpholinoethylcarbodiimide, N-ethyl-N'-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-. 35 carbodiimide, thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride, lower

20

25

0.0

alkoxycarbonyl halide [e.g. ethyl chloroformate, isobutyl chloroformate, etc.], 1-(p-chlorobenzenesulfonyloxy)-6-chloro-lH-benzotriazole, or the like. The reaction is also preferably carried out in the presence of a conventional base such as triethylamine, pyridine, sodium hydroxide or the like.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction can be carried out under cooling to heating.

### 10 Process 5

The object compound [If] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [V] or its salt with a compound [VI] or its salt in the presence of a reducing agent.

Suitable salt of the compound [V] may be an inorganic or organic acid addition salt as exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable salt of the compound [VI] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable reducing agent may be diborane, borane-organic amine complex [e.g. borane-pyridine complex, etc.], alkali metal cyanoborohydride [e.g. sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, etc.] and the like.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.], dioxane, tetrahydrofuran or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction.

The reaction may also be carried out in an acidic condition [e.g. presence of acetic acid, etc.] and the reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to warming.

### Process 6

The object compound [Ih] or its salt can be prepared by subjecting a compound [Ig] or its salt to reduction.

10

Suitable salts of the compounds [Ig] and [Ih] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

The present reduction is carried out by chemical reduction, catalytic reduction, or the like.

Suitable reduction agents to be used in chemical reduction are a combination of metal [e.g. tin, zinc, iron, etc.] or metallic compound [e.g. chromium chloride, chromium acetate, etc.] and an organic or inorganic acid [e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, propionic acid,

trifluoroacetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.

Suitable catalysts to be used in catalytic reduction are conventional ones such as platinum catalyst [e.g. platinum plate, spongy platinum, platinum black, colloidal platinum, platinum oxide, platinum wire, etc.], palladium catalyst [e.g. spongy palladium, palladium black, palladium oxide, palladium on carbon, colloidal palladium, palladium on barium sulfate, palladium on barium carbonate, etc.], nickel catalyst [e.g. reduced nickel, nickel oxide, Raney nickel, etc.], cobalt catalyst [e.g. reduced cobalt, Raney cobalt, etc.], iron catalyst [e.g. reduced iron, Raney iron, etc.], copper catalyst [e.g. reduced copper, Raney copper, Ullman copper, etc.] or the like.

The reduction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.], N,N-dimethylformamide, or a mixture thereof. Additionally, in case that the above-mentioned acids to be used in chemical reduction are in liquid, they can also be used as a solvent. Further, a suitable solvent to be used in catalytic reduction may be the above-mentioned solvent and other conventional solvent such as diethyl ether, methylene chloride, dioxane, ethyl acetate, tetrahydrofuran, etc., or a mixture thereof.

10

15

20

25

30

35

The reaction temperature of this reduction is not critical and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to warming.

In this reaction, in case that the compound [Ig] having an N-protective group for R<sup>3</sup> and/or a double bond for a heavy solid line is used as a starting compound, the compound [Ih] having hydrogen for R<sup>3</sup> and/or a single bond for a heavy solid line may be obtained according to reaction conditions. This case is included within the scope of the present reaction.

### Process 7

The object compound [I] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [VII] with a compound [III] or its salt in the presence of a reducing agent.

Suitable salts of the compounds [I] and [III] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable reducing agent may be borohydride compound such as alkali metal borohydride [e.g. sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium cyanoborohydride, lithium triethylborohydride, etc.], tetrabutylammonium cyanoborohydride or the like, in which preferable one is alkali metal borohydride.

The reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a base such as an alkali metal carbonate [e.g. sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, etc.], an alkaline earth metal carbonate [e.g. magnesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, etc.], an alkali metal bicarbonate [e.g. sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, etc.], tri(lower)-alkylamine [e.g. trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc.], picoline or the like.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent, such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, propanol, isopropanol, etc.], dioxane, or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence

20

the reaction, or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction can be carried out under cooling to heating.

# 5 Process 8

The object compound [Ij] or its salt can be prepared by subjecting a compound [Ii] or its salt to elimination reaction of the N-protective group.

Suitable salts of the compounds[Ii] and [Ij] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

This reaction is carried out in accordance with a conventional method such as hydrolysis, reduction or the like.

The hydrolysis is preferably carried out in the presence of a base or an acid including Lewis acid.

Suitable base may include an inorganic base and an organic base such as an alkali metal [e.g. sodium, potassium, etc.], an alkaline earth metal [e.g. magnesium, calcium, etc.], the hydroxide or carbonate or bicarbonate thereof, hydrazine, trialkylamine [e.g. trimethylamine, triethylamine, etc.], picoline, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-non-5-ene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane.

1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene, or the like.

Suitable acid may include an organic acid [e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trichloroacetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.], an inorganic acid [e.g. hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, hydrogen chloride, hydrogen bromide, hydrogen fluoride, etc.] and an acid addition salt compound [e.g. pyridine hydrochloride, etc.].

The elimination using trihaloacetic acid [e.g. trichloroacetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, etc.] or the like is preferably carried out in the presence of cation trapping agents [e.g. anisole, phenol, etc.].

The reaction is usually carried out in a solvent such

10

15

as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.], methylene chloride, chloroform, tetrachloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, a mixture thereof or any other solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction. A liquid base or acid can be also used as the solvent. The reaction temperature is not critical and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to heating.

The reduction method applicable for the elimination reaction may include chemical reduction and catalytic reduction.

Suitable reducing agents to be used in chemical reduction are a combination of metal [e.g. tin, zinc, iron, etc.] or metallic compound [e.g. chromium chloride, chromium acetate, etc.] and an organic or inorganic acid [e.g. formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, etc.].

Suitable catalysts to be used in catalytic reduction are conventional ones such as platinum catalysts [e.g. 20 platinum plate, spongy platinum, platinum black, colloidal platinum, platinum oxide, platinum wire, etc.], palladium catalysts [e.g. spongy palladium, palladium black, palladium oxide, palladium on carbon, colloidal palladium, palladium on barium sulfate, palladium on barium 25 carbonate, etc.], nickel catalysts [e.g. reduced nickel, nickel oxide, Raney nickel, etc.], cobalt catalysts [e.g. reduced cobalt, Raney cobalt, etc.], iron catalysts [e.g. reduced iron, Raney iron, etc.], copper catalysts [e.g. reduced copper, Raney copper, Ullman copper, etc.] and the 30 like.

In case that the N-protective group is benzyl, the reduction is preferably carried out in the presence of a combination of palladium catalysts [e.g. palladium black, palladium on carbon, etc.] and formic acid or its salt [e.g. ammonium formate, etc.].

WO 93/15041 PCT/JP93/00113 - 25 -

The reduction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction such as water, methanol, ethanol, propanol, N,N-dimethylformamide, or a mixture thereof.

Additionally, in case that the above-mentioned acids to be used in chemical reduction are in liquid, they can also be used as a solvent. Further, a suitable solvent to be used in catalytic reduction may be the above-mentioned solvent, and other conventional solvent such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, etc. or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature of this reduction is not critical and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to heating.

In this reaction, in case that the compound [Ii] 15 having lower alkyl, lower alkenyl or lower alkoxy, each of which is substituted with esterified carboxy, amino substituted with esterified carboxy(lower)alkyl, or nitro for  $R^2$  and/or a double bond for a heavy solid line is used as a starting compound, the compound [Ij] having lower 20 alkyl, lower alkenyl or lower alkoxy, each of which is substituted with carboxy, amino substituted with carboxy(lower)alkyl, or amino for  $R^2$  and/or a single bond for a heavy solid line may be obtained according to reaction conditions. This case is included within the 25 scope of the present reaction.

The starting compounds [II], [IIIa], [IIIb], [IIIc], [IIId] and [VII] or a salt thereof can be prepared by the following processes.

30

# Process A

$$5 \qquad R^3 - NH \qquad O - R^5$$

dealkylation

[VIII]
or its salt

10

15

Process B

20

 $X-R^4$  [IV]

25 [IX] or its salt

30

$$R^3$$
-NH- $R_c^2$ 

35

[IIIa]
or its salt

# Process C

R<sub>b</sub>-NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>

elimination of the N-protective group

[IIIb]
or its salt

10

5

$$H_2N$$
 $R^2$ 

15

[IIIc]
or its salt

# Process D

[VII]

25

# Process E

[XI]

[II]

## Process F

[XII]
or its salt

[XIII]
or its salt

# Process G

15 
$$(CH_2)_n$$
  $H_2N$   $(CH_2)_n$   $(CH_2)_n$   $(CH_2)_n$  or its salt

# 20 Process H



25 [IIIc] or its salt

[IIId]
or its salt

### Process I

HO
$$(CH_2)_n$$

$$[XIII]$$

$$[XIV]$$
or its salt
$$(CH_2)_n$$

$$[XIV]$$

# Process J

5
$$(CH_2)_n$$

$$(CH_2)_n$$

$$[IIIc]$$
or its salt

or its salt

wherein  $R^2$ ,  $R_c^2$ ,  $R^3$ ,  $R_b^3$ ,  $R^4$ , X and a heavy solid line are each as defined above,

 $R^{5}$  is lower alkyl,

15  $R_C^3$  is hydrogen or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio,

 $Y_{\underline{a}}^{1}$  is acid residue,

Y<sup>2</sup> is lower alkylsulfonyloxy or arylsulfonyloxy, and

20  $R_{
m d}^3$  is an N-protective group or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio.

The above-mentioned processes for preparing the starting compound are explained in detail in the following.

# Process A

25

30

The compound [IX] or its salt can be prepared by subjecting a compound [VIII] or its salt to dealkylation reaction.

Suitable salt of the compound [VIII] may be an inorganic or organic acid addition salt as exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable salt of the compound [IX] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

trimethylsilyliodide, etc.].

The reaction is carried out in the presence of an acid including Lewis acid [e.g. hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydroiodic acid, boron tribromide, boron trichloride, etc.] or tri(lower alkyl)silyliodide [e.g.

- 30

The reaction is usually carried out in a solvent such as water, acetic acid, methylene chloride, tetrahydrofuran, a mixture thereof or any other solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction.

Additionally, in case that the above-mentioned acids are in liquid, they can also be used as a solvent.

The reaction temperature is not critical and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to heating.

### 15 Process B

5

The compound [IIIa] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [IX] or its salt with a compound [IV].

Suitable salt of the compound [IIIa] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

When the compound [IV] having halogen for X is used in this reaction, the reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a base such as alkali metal [e.g. lithium, sodium, potassium, etc.], the hydroxide or carbonate or bicarbonate thereof [e.g. sodium hydroxide,

potassium carbonate, potassium bicarbonate, etc.], alkaline earth metal [e.g. calcium, magnesium, etc.], alkali metal hydride [e.g. sodium hydride, etc.], alkaline earth metal hydride [e.g. calcium hydride, etc.], alkali metal alkoxide [e.g. sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide,

potassium tert-butoxide, etc.], alkaline earth metal alkoxide [e.g. magnesium methoxide, magnesium ethoxide, etc.] or the like, or alkali metal iodide [e.g. sodium iodide, potassium iodide, etc.] or the like.

Additionally, the reaction is also preferably carried out in the presence of phase transfer catalyst [e.g.

WO 93/15041 - 31 - PCT/JP93/00113

tetra-n-butylammonium bromide, etc.].

This reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, aromatic hydrocarbon [e.g. benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.], N,N-dimethylformamide, acetone, a mixture thereof, or any other solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction. Additionally, in case that the compound [VI] is in liquid, it can also be used as a solvent.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to heating.

### Process C

5

15

20

The compound [IIIc] or its salt can be prepared by subjecting a compound [IIIb] or its salt to elimination reaction of the N-protective group.

Suitable salts of the compounds [IIIb] and [IIIc] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

This reaction can be carried out in substantially the same manner as <u>Process 8</u>, and therefore the reaction mode and the reaction condition [e.g. solvent, reaction temperature, etc.] of this reaction are to be referred to those explained in <u>Process 8</u>.

### Process D

The compound [VII] can be prepared by subjecting a compound [X] to oxidation.

Suitable oxidizing agent to be used in this oxidation may be selenium dioxide and the like.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as water, dioxane, acetic anhydride or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction, or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction is usually carried out under heating.

35

10

### Process E

The compound [II] can be prepared by reacting a compound [XI] with a base.

Suitable base may be alkali metal [e.g. lithium, sodium, potassium, etc.], the hydroxide or carbonate or bicarbonate thereof [e.g. sodium hydroxide, potassium carbonate, potassium bicarbonate, etc.], alkaline earth metal [e.g. calcium, magnesium, etc.], alkali metal hydride [e.g. sodium hydride, etc.], alkaline earth metal hydride [e.g. calcium hydride, etc.], alkali metal alkoxide [e.g. sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide, etc.], alkaline earth metal alkoxide [e.g. magnesium methoxide, magnesium ethoxide, etc.] and the like.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.], diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, dimethoxyethane or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction, or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction can be carried out under cooling to heating.

### Process F

The compound [XIII] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [XII] or its salt with lower alkanesulfonyl halide or arenesulfonyl halide.

Suitable salts of the compounds [XII] and [XIII] may be an inorganic acid addition salt as exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable lower alkanesulfonyl halide may be mesyl chloride, ethanesulfonyl bromide and the like.

Suitable arenesulfonyl halide may be benzenesulfonyl chloride, tosyl chloride and the like.

The reaction is preferably carried out in the

15

20

30

35

presence of a base as explained in Process 1.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.], diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, pyridine or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction, or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction can be carried out under cooling to warming.

#### 10 Process G

The compound [IIIc] or its salt can be prepared by the following method. Namely, 1) the compound [XIII] or its salt is firstly reacted with an azide compound, and then 2) subjecting the resultant product to catalytic reduction.

Suitable salts of the compounds [IIIc] and [XIII] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

In the first step, suitable azide compound may be alkali metal azide [e.g. sodium azide, potassium azide, etc.], alkaline earth metal azide [e.g. calcium azide, etc.], hydrogen azide and the like. The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, dimethyl sulfoxide, N,N-dimethylformamide or any other organic solvent which 25 does not adversely influence the reaction. The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction is usually carried out under cooling to heating.

In the second step, this reaction can be carried out in substantially the same manner as catalytic reduction explained in Process 8, and therefore the catalyst, the reaction mode and the reaction condition [e.g. solvent, reaction temperature, etc.] of this reaction are to be referred to those as catalytic reduction explained in Process 8. The reduction may be also carried out in the presence of combination of palladium catalysts [e.g.

palladium black, palladium on carbon, etc.] and formic acid or its salt [e.g. ammonium formate, etc.].

### Process H

5

10

15

20

25

30

The compound [IIId] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [IIIc] or its salt with an N-protective agent or lower alkylthio(lower)alkyl halide.

Suitable salts of the compound [IIIc] and [IIId] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

Suitable N-protective agent may be a halogen compound of N-protective group aforementioned such as acetyl chloride, tert-butoxycarbonyl chloride, benzyl chloride, benzyl bromide or the like.

Suitable lower alkylthio(lower)alkyl halide may be methylthiomethyl chloride, methylthioethyl chloride or the like.

The reaction is preferably carried out in the presence of a base as explained in Process 1.

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.], tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, pyridine or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction, or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction can be carried out under cooling to heating.

### Process I

The compound [XIV] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [XII] or its salt with phthalimide in the presence of triphenylphosphine and diethyl azodicarboxylate.

Suitable salts of the compound [XII] and [XIV] may be the same as those exemplified for the compound [I].

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane or

15

20

25

any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction is preferably carried out at ambient temperature or under warming to heating.

### Process J

The compound [IIIc] or its salt can be prepared by reacting a compound [XIV] or its salt with hydrazine.

Suitable salts of the compounds [IIIc] and [XIV] may be an inorganic or organic acid addition salt as exemplified for the compound [I].

The reaction is usually carried out in a conventional solvent such as water, an alcohol [e.g. methanol, ethanol, etc.] or any other organic solvent which does not adversely influence the reaction, or a mixture thereof.

The reaction temperature is not critical, and the reaction can be carried out at ambient temperature or under warming to heating.

The compounds obtained by the above processes can be isolated and purified by a conventional method such as pulverization, recrystallization, column chromatography, reprecipitation, or the like, and converted to the desired salt in conventional manners, if necessary.

It is to be noted that the compound [I] and the other compounds may include one or more stereoisomers due to asymmetric carbon atoms, and all of such isomers and mixture thereof are included within the scope of this invention.

The object compound [I] and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof possess gut selective sympathomimetic and anti-pollakiuria activities, and are useful for the treatment and/or prevention of gastrointestinal disorders caused by smooth muscle contractions in human beings or animals, and more

particularly to methods for the treatment and/or prevention of spasm or hyperanakinesia in case of irritable bowel syndrome, gastritis, gastric ulcer, duodenal ulcer, enteritis, cholecystopathy, cholangitis, urinary calculus and the like; and for the treatment and/or prevention of dysuria such as pollakiuria, urinary incontinence or the like in case of nervous pollakiuria, neurogenic bladder dysfunction, nocturia, unstable bladder, cystospasm, chronic cystitis, chronic prostatitis or the like. Additionally, the object compound is expected to be useful as therapeutical and/or preventive agents for obesity and glaucoma.

In order to illustrate the usefulness of the object compound [I], the pharmacological data of the compound [I] are shown in the following.

### Test 1

5

10

15

Effect on isolated rat distal colon :

### 20 (i) Test Method:

Male SD rats (180~230 g) were used. Animals were fasted for 24 hours prior to experiment. Distal colon was removed immediately after sacrifice and placed in an organ bath containing 25 ml Tyrode solution aerating with 95% O<sub>2</sub>, 5% CO<sub>2</sub> at 37°C. The strip was mounted under 0.5 g tension and spontaneous contractions were recorded isometrically. After the mobility was of a uniform size, test compound was added to an organ bath and the contractions were observed over a 30 minutes period. Effect of test compound was calculated by comparing contractions before and after test compound.

25

# (ii) Test Results :

Test Compound (Example No.)	IC <sub>50</sub> (M)
1	$6.8 \times 10^{-10}$
2-3)	$8.4 \times 10^{-10}$
3-2)	6.6 x 10 <sup>-10</sup>

# 10 Test 2

Effect on isolated non-pregnant rat uterus :

# (i) Test Method:

Female SD rats (150~180 g) were used. 48 and 24hours prior to use, rats were given estradiol (ovahormon 1.5 benzoat : Trademark, Teikoku Hormone Mfg. Co., Ltd.) subcutaneously at a dose of 40 µg/rat to induce oestrus. The animals were killed and uterine horns were removed. Each strip was placed in an organ bath containing 25 ml Locke solution aerating with 95%  $O_2$ , 5%  $CO_2$  at 37°C under 20 l g tension. Contractions were recorded isometrically. After the spontaneous contractions were of a uniform size, test compound was added to organ bath. The motility was observed over a 20 minutes period. Effect of test compound was calculated by comparing contractions before 25 and after test compound.

# (ii) Test Results :

0	Test Compound (Example No.)	IC <sub>50</sub> (M)
	1	$2.0 \times 10^{-7}$
	2-3)	$4.4 \times 10^{-7}$
5	3-2)	$2.4 \times 10^{-7}$

35

For therapeutic purpose, the compound [I] and a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof of the present invention can be used in a form of pharmaceutical preparation containing one of said compounds, as an active 5 ingredient, in admixture with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier such as an organic or inorganic solid, semi-solid or liquid excipient suitable for oral, parenteral or external (topical) administration. pharmaceutical preparations may be capsules, tablets, 10 dragees, granules, suppositories, solutions, lotion, inhalant, ophthalmic preparations, suspension, emulsion, ointment, gel, or the like. If desired, there may be included in these preparations, auxiliary substances, stabilizing agents, wetting or emulsifying agents, buffers and other commonly used additives. 15

While the dosage of the compound [I] will vary depending upon the age and condition of the patient, an average single dose of about 0.1 mg, 1 mg, 10 mg, 50 mg, 100 mg, 250 mg, 500 mg and 1000 mg of the compound [I] may be effective for treating the above-mentioned diseases. In general, amounts between 0.1 mg/body and about 1,000 mg/body may be administered per day.

25

20

- to be continued on the next page -

30

The following Preparations and Examples are given for the purpose of illustrating this invention.

## Preparation 1

5 To a mixture of 3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-one (3.6 g), benzylamine (2.5 ml), and acetic acid (27 ml) in water bath was added portionwise sodium cyanoborohydride (0.49 g), and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 5 hours. Additional 10 benzylamine (2.5 ml) and sodium cyanoborohydride (0.10 g) were added to the mixture, and stirring was continued for an additional 2 hours. The reaction mixture was made alkaline (pH>8) with 10% sodium hydroxide (150 ml), and extracted once with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed 15 with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution; n-hexane-ethyl acetate; 3:1 to 2:1 to 1:1) to give N-benzyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-20 6-amine (4.8 g) as an oil.

IR (Film): 3320 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.3-2.2 (5H, m), 2.6-3.0 (5H, m), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.79 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 3.89 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 6.63 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.73 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.99 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.4 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 281

## Preparation 2

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 1.

1) N-Benzyl-2-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine
IR (Film): 3320 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.2-2.2 (5H, m), 2.5-3.0 (5H, m),

```
3.77 (3H, s), 3.77 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 3.87 (1H, d,
                 J=13Hz), 6.6-6.7 (2H, m), 7.0-7.1 (1H, m),
                 7.1-7.4 (5H, m)
            MASS (m/z): 281
 5
      2)
           N-Benzyl-3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-
            benzocyclohepten-6-amine
           mp : 64-68°C
           IR (Nujol): 1520, 1335 cm<sup>-1</sup>
10
           NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.40-1.65 (1H, m), 1.75-2.15 (3H,
                 m), 2.65-3.05 (5H, m), 3.80 (1H, d, J=13.1Hz),
                 3.89 (1H, d, J=13.1Hz), 7.2-7.35 (6H, m),
                 7.93-8.03 (2H, m)
           MASS (m/z): 296
15
           N-Methylthioethyl-(7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-
      3)
           naphthyl)amine
           IR (Neat): 3300, 1510, 1340 cm^{-1}
           NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.56-1.82 (1H, m), 2.00-2.19 (1H,
20
                m), 2.11 (3H, s), 2.60-3.20 (9H, m), 7.22 (1H,
                d, J=9.1Hz), 7.89-8.02 (2H, m)
```

A mixture of N-benzyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (3.0 g) and 47% hydrobromic 25 acid (106 ml) was stirred at 130°C for 1.5 hours. cooling, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo. To the residue was added 28% ammonium hydroxide, and the whole was extracted once with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed twice with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium 30 sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution; chloroform-methanol; 25:1 to 15:1) to give 8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol (1.9 g) as an oil, which solidified on standing. 35

```
mp: 87-89°C

IR (Nujol): 3470 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.4-2.2 (4H, m), 2.5-3.7 (7H, m),

3.80 (2H, s), 6.4-6.6 (2H, m), 6.8-7.0 (1H, m),

7.1-7.4 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 267
```

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 3.

1) 6-Benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol mp: 124-125°C

IR (Nujol): 3280 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.4-2.2 (4H, m), 2.2-3.6 (7H, m), 3.78 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 3.88 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 6.4-6.6 (2H, m), 6.9-7.0 (1H, m), 7.2-7.4 (5H, m)

20 MASS (m/z): 267

9-Benzylamino-5,6,7,8,9,10-hexahydrobenzocyclo-octen-2-ol

IR (Neat): 3280, 2680, 2580, 1605 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.1-1.8 (6H, m), 2.5-3.0 (5H, m), 3.87 (2H, s), 6.54 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.61 (1H, dd, J=2.7Hz, 8.1Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.15-7.5 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 281

Preparation 5

To an ice-cooled solution of 8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol (1.7 g) in toluene (56 ml) was added portionwise sodium hydride (60% dispersion in mineral oil; 0.31 g). After the addition was complete,

30

10

the mixture was stirred at 70°C for 1 hour. After cooling, a mixture of ethyl bromoacetate (0.81 ml) and tetra-n-butylammonium bromide (0.10 g) in toluene (14 ml) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 70°C for 4 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was poured into saturated aqueous ammonium chloride, and extracted once with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution; chloroform-ethanol; 25:1 to 5:1) to give N-benzyl-3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (2.0 g) as an oil.

IR (Film): 3600, 3300, 1750 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.29 (3H, t, J=7Hz),

1.3-2.2 (5H, m), 2.6-3.0 (5H, m),

3.78 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 3.88 (1H, d, J=13Hz),

4.26 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.58 (2H, s),

6.61 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J=2Hz),

6.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.0-7.4 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 353

#### Preparation 6

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 5.

1) N-Benzyl-2-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine IR (Film): 3300, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.29 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.3-2.2 (5H, m), 2.5-3.0 (5H, m), 3.77 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 3.87 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 4.26 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.58 (2H, s), 6.62 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.69 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.06 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.1-7.4 (5H, m)

```
MASS (m/z): 353
```

N-Benzyl-2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methoxy-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine
IR (Film): 3220, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.29 (6H, t, J=7Hz), 1.38 (1H, br
s), 1.4-1.6 (1H, m), 1.6-2.1 (3H, m), 2.5-2.9
(5H, m), 3.7-3.9 (2H, m), 4.30 (4H, q, J=7Hz),
5.15 (1H, s), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=8Hz), 6.75
(1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.05 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.1-7.4
(5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 426 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

- 4) Ethyl 2-[8-(benzylamino)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yloxy]propionate
  IR (Film): 3320, 1720, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>
  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.28 (3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.35-2.10
  (4H, m), 1.60 (3H, d, J=6.8Hz), 2.6-2.95 (5H, m), 3.77 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 3.87 (1H, d, J=13Hz),
  4.20 (2H, q, J=7.0Hz), 4.70 (1H, q, J=6.8Hz), 6.56 (1H, dd, J=2.7Hz, 8.2Hz), 6.74 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.2-7.4 (5H, m)

## Preparation 7

A mixture of N-benzyl-3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-

```
6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (1.8 g), ammonium formate (3.2 g), 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet; 0.72 g), and ethanol (50 ml) was refluxed for 0.5 hour. After cooling, the catalyst was filtered off, and rinsed with ethanol. The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution; chloroform-ethanol; 10:1 to 5:1) to give 3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (1.2 g) as an oil.
IR (Film): 3360, 1750 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.29 (3H, t, J=7Hz),
1.4-2.5 (6H, m), 2.5-3.2 (5H, m),
4.26 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.58 (2H, s),
```

The following compound was obtained by reacting the compound, which was prepared according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 7, with hydrogen chloride.

6.62 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.75 (1H, d, J=2Hz),

2-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride

```
25 mp: 151-156°C

IR (Nujol): 3100-2000, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.0-1.5 (1H, m),

1.21 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.6-2.3 (3H, m),

2.5-3.2 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, q, J=7Hz),

4.72 (2H, s), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz),

6.74 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.04 (1H, d, J=8Hz),

8.0-8.5 (3H, br s)

MASS (m/z): 263 (M<sup>+</sup>-HCl)
```

6.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

MASS (m/z): 263

35

15

The following compound was obtained by reacting the compound, which was prepared according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 1, with hydrogen chloride.

5

N-Benzyl-3-methoxy-5,6,7,8,9,10-hexahydrobenzocycloocten-6-amine hydrochloride

mp : 178-180°C

IR (Nujol): 2640, 2575, 1600, 1580 cm<sup>-1</sup>

10 NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 0.8-1.1 (1H, m), 1.3-1.55 (1H, m), 1.8-1.9 (4H, m), 2.55-2.8 (2H, m), 2.95-3.3 (3H, m), 3.72 (3H, s), 4.27 (2H, m), 6.7-6.85 (2H, m), 7.0-7.1 (1H, m), 7.35-7.65 (5H, m), 9.2-9.5 (1H, m), 9.6-9.9 (1H, m)

15

# Preparation 10

The following compounds were obtained by reacting the compounds, which were prepared according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 5, with hydrogen chloride.

20

1) N-Benzyl-3-pentyloxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride

mp: 188-193°C

IR (Nujol): 1605, 1580 cm<sup>-1</sup>

25 NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 0.9 (3H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.1-1.5 (5H, m), 1.6-2.1 (4H, m), 2.25-2.45 (1H, m), 2.6-3.3 (5H, m), 3.91 (2H, t, J=6.4Hz), 4.1-4.3(2H, m), 6.68 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, 8.2Hz), 6.84 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 7.01 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.35-7.5 30 (3H, m), 7.6-7.7 (2H, m), 8.3-8.6 (2H, m)

- 2) N-Benzyl-3-(2-oxopentyloxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride
- mp : 166-169°C

35 IR (Nujol): 2425, 2375, 1715, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>

```
NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.87 (3H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.05-1.4
                 (1H, m), 1.54 (2H, sextet, J=7.4Hz), 1.8-2.1
                 (2H, m), 2.3-2.45 (1H, m), 2.45-2.6 (2H, m),
                 2.6-3.3 (5H, m), 4.26 (2H, s), 4.75 (2H, s),
 5
                 6.64 (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz, 8.3Hz), 6.84 (1H, d,
                 J=2.6Hz), 7.02 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.35-7.5 (3H,
                 m), 7.6-7.7 (2H, m), 9.35-9.75 (2H, m)
           N-Benzyl-3-((RS)-2-oxopentan-3-yloxy)-6,7,8,9-
           tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride
10
           mp: 162-166°C
           IR (Nujol): 2420, 2350, 1715, 1605 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.8-1.1 (3H, m), 1.05-1.4 (1H,
                 m), 1.7-2.1 (4H, m), 2.14 (3H, s), 2.2-2.4 (1H,
15
                 m), 2.6-3.3 (5H, m), 4.25 (2H, s), 4.65 (1H, m),
                 6.5-6.7 (1H, m), 6.8-6.9 (1H, m), 7.0-7.05 (1H,
                 m), 7.4-7.65 (5H, m), 8.8-9.2 (2H, m)
           MASS (m/z) : 351 (M-HC1)^+
           N-Benzyl-2-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7-dihydro-5H-
20
      4)
           benzocyclohepten-7-amine hydrochloride
           mp : 121.5-131°C
           IR (Nujol): 2750-2300, 1755, 1600-1570, 1200 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (DMSO-d_{\epsilon}, \delta): 1.21 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.16 (1H,
25
                 m), 2.39 (1H, m), 2.7-2.95 (2H, m), 4.02 (1H,
                 m), 4.1-4.25 (4H, m), 4.76 (2H, s), 6.11 (1H,
                 dd, J=11.8Hz, 3.4Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J=11.8Hz),
                 6.78 (1H, dd, J=8.3Hz, 2.6Hz), 6.89 (1H, d,
                 J=2.6Hz), 7.14 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.4-7.45 (3H,
                 m), 7.55-7.65 (2H, m), 9.7 (2H, br)
30
           MASS (m/z): 351 (M^{+}), 244 (base), 91
      5)
           (S)-N-Benzyl-3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-
           tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride
35
           mp: 129-130°C
```

```
[\alpha]_D^{21} = +28.9^{\circ} (c=0.34, EtOH)
             IR (Nujol): 3500, 3420, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta) : 1.1-1.4 (1H, m), 1.21 (3H, t,
                  J=7Hz), 1.7-2.1 (2H, m), 2.2-2.4 (1H, m),
  5
                  2.6-2.8 (2H, m), 2.8-3.3 (3H, m), 4.17 (2H, q,
                  J=7Hz), 4.2-4.4 (2H, m), 4.72 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H,
                  dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.86 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.04 (1H,
                  d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.5 (3H, m), 7.5-7.7 (2H, m),
                  9.2-9.6 (2H, br m)
 10
            MASS (m/z): 353
            (R)-N-Benzyl-3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-
       6)
            tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride
                   129-131°C
            [\alpha]_{D}^{22} = -28.4^{\circ} \text{ (c=0.38, EtOH)}
15
            IR (Nujol) : 3550-3100, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, \delta): 1.1-1.4 (1H, m), 1.21 (3H, t,
                 J=7Hz), 1.8-2.2 (2H, m), 2.3-2.5 (1H, m),
                 2.6-2.8 (2H, m), 2.8-3.3 (3H, m), 4.17 (2H, q,
20
                 J=7Hz), 4.2-4.4 (2H, m), 4.72 (2H, s), 6.67 (1H,
                 dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.86 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.03 (1H,
                 d, J=8Hz), 7.4-7.5 (3H, m), 7.6-7.8 (2H, m),
                 9.2-9.8 (2H, br m)
           MASS (m/z): 353
25
```

To a mixture of 8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol (970 mg) and 1,1,1-trichloro-2-methyl-2-propanol hydrate (1.28 g) in acetone (30 ml) was added portionwise powder KOH (1.71 g) and the mixture was stirred for 20 hours at ambient temperature. After the solvent was evaporated in vacuo, the residue was poured into 1N sodium hydroxide (30 ml) and washed with diethyl ether. The pH of the aqueous layer was adjusted to 6.0 with 3N hydrochloric acid. The precipitates were filtered

```
The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo and water was
      added to the residue. The resulting precipitates were
      collected by filtration and dried to give
      2-[8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-
 5
      2-yloxy]-2-methylpropionic acid (0.51 g).
           mp: 187-189°C
           IR (Nujol): 3450.1600 \text{ cm}^{-1}
           NMR (NaOD, \delta): 1.2-1.45 (1H, m), 1.48 (6H, s),
                 1.5-2.0 (3H, m), 2.45-2.95 (5H, m), 3.65-3.9
10
                 (2H, m), 6.6-6.8 (2H, m), 6.95-7.05 (1H, m),
                 7.2-7.4 (5H, m)
           MASS (m/z): 354 (M+1)^+
      Preparation 12
15
           Thionyl chloride (0.2 ml) was added dropwise to
      ethanol (5 ml) with stirring at -10°C. After stirring for
      ten minutes, 2-(8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-
      benzocyclohepten-2-yloxy)-2-methylpropionic acid (0.49 g)
      was added portionwise to the mixture. The reaction
      mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour and
20
      then refluxed for 3 hours. After cooling, the mixture was
      poured into an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen
      carbonate, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract
      was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and
25
      concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column
      chromatography on silica gel with chloroform-methanol
      (100:1) to give ethyl 2-(8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-
      5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yloxy)-2-methylpropionate (0.43 g).
           IR (Neat): 1725, 1600 \text{ cm}^{-1}
           NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.25 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.35-1.55
30
                 (1H, m), 1.57 (6H, s), 1.65-2.1 (3H, m), 2.6-2.9
                 (5H, m), 3.76 (1H, d, J=13Hz), 3.87 (1H, d,
                J=13Hz), 4.22 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 6.55 (1H, dd,
```

J=2.6Hz, 8.2Hz), 6.71 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz), 6.92

(1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.2-7.35 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 381

## Preparation 13

To a suspension of methyltriphenylphosphonium bromide 5 (4.2 g) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was added potassium t-butoxide (1.34 g) portionwise in an ice-bath. addition was complete, the ice-bath was removed and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2.5 hours. 7-Methoxy-1-tetralone (1.78 g) in tetrahydrofuran (7.8 ml) 10 was added to the mixture and stirring was continued for an additional 30 minutes. The reaction mixture was poured into ice-water, followed by the addition of n-hexane. precipitates were filtered off and washed with n-hexane. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. 15 The residue was triturated with n-hexane and the mixture was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to give 1-methylene-7-methoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene (1.69 g) as an oil.

IR (Film): 3080, 1620 (shoulder), 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.6-1.9 (2H, m), 2.4-2.6 (2H, m),
2.71 (2H, t-like, J=ca. 6Hz), 3.74 (3H, s), 4.96
(1H, d, J=1Hz), 5.53 (1H, d, J=1Hz), 6.78 (1H,
dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.16 (1H,
d, J=2Hz)

MASS (m/z): 174

# Preparation 14

To a solution of thallium nitrate (2.4 g) in methanol (24 ml) was added 1-methylene-7-methoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene (1.0 g) in methanol (7 ml) in one portion. The mixture was stirred for 1 minute and diluted with chloroform (24 ml). The resulting precipitate was filtered off and the filtrate was washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over anhydrous

magnesium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (elution; 8:1, n-hexane-ethyl acetate) to give 3-methoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-one (0.78 g).

5 mp: 50-52°C

IR (Film):  $1700 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ 

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.8-2.1 (2H, m), 2.56 (2H, t-like, J=ca. 7Hz), 2.8-3.0 (2H, m), 3.68 (2H, s), 3.78 (3H, s), 6.7-6.8 (2H, m), 7.0-7.1 (1H, m)

10 MASS (m/z): 190

### Preparation 15

(S)-3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-amine hydrochloride (35.5 g) was neutralized with cold 2N sodium hydroxide (155 ml) and the mixture was extracted 15 once with ethyl acetate (310 ml). The extract was washed once with brine (155 ml), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to afford (S)-3methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine 20 (30.1 g). A mixture of (S)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (30.1 g), 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet; 5.96 g), acetic acid (0.89 ml), benzaldehyde (31.6 ml), and ethanol (300 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature for 3 hours. Then, hydrogen was 25 introduced to the mixture and stirring was continued for an additional 1.5 hours. The catalyst was filtered off and washed with ethanol. Removal of the solvent in vacuo gave the residue, which was dissolved in ethyl acetate (423 ml). To this solution was added, with mechanically 30 stirring in an ice-bath, 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (77 ml). After stirring at ambient temperature for 1.5 hours, the mixture was filtered and the cake was washed with ethyl acetate (50 ml). The product was dried in vacuo to give (S)-N-benzyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride (47.3 35

```
g) as a white solid.
             mp:
                   223-224°C
             [\alpha]_D^{21} = +39.2^{\circ} (c=0.49, EtOH)
             IR (Nujol): 3050-2100, 1600, 1570 cm<sup>-1</sup>
 5
             NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.1-1.4 (1H, m), 1.8-2.1 (2H, m),
                  2.3-2.5 (1H, m), 2.6-2.8 (2H, m), 2.8-3.0 (1H,
                  m), 3.0-3.3 (2H, m), 3.72 (3H, s), 4.26 (2H, br
                  s), 6.69 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.84 (1H, d,
                  J=2Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.5 (3H, m),
10
                  7.6-7.8 (2H, m), 9.3-9.8 (2H, br m)
            MASS (m/z): 281
       Preparation 16
            The following compound was obtained according to a
       similar manner to that of Preparation 15.
15
```

(R)-N-Benzyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride

mp: 223-224°C

[ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>20</sup> = -42.7° (c=0.36, EtOH)

IR (Nujol): 3100-2100, 1610, 1580 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.0-1.4 (2H, m), 1.8-2.1 (2H, m), 2.3-2.5 (1H, m), 2.6-2.8 (2H, m), 2.8-3.0 (1H, m), 3.0-3.3 (2H, m), 3.72 (3H, s), 4.2-4.4 (2H, m), 6.69 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.84 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.5 (3H, m), 7.6-7.8 (2H, m), 9.4-9.8 (2H, br m)

MASS (m/z): 281

# 30 Preparation 17

1) To a suspension of (S)-N-benzyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride (46.8 g) in dichloromethane (147 ml) at -10°C was added 1M boron tribromide in dichloromethane (294 ml) dropwise over 50 minutes during which time the temperature was allowed to

10

15

20

rise to 10°C. After the addition was complete, the mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and stirred for a total of 3 hours. The solvent was almost removed in vacuo and the residue was quenched with a mixture of water (600 ml) and ethyl acetate (450 ml) in an ice-bath. The pH of the mixture was adjusted to 8.0 with solid sodium bicarbonate (74 g) followed by the addition of 1N sodium hydroxide (60 ml). The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted once with ethyl acetate (200 ml). The combined organic layers were washed once with brine (300 ml), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo.

2) The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (377 ml) and treated with 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (73 ml) in an ice-bath. After stirring at ambient temperature for 1 hour, the mixture was filtered and the cake was washed with ethyl acetate (45 ml). The product was dried in vacuo to give (S)-8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol hydrochloride (43.3 g) as a white solid.

mp:  $232-233^{\circ}C$   $[\alpha]_D^{22} = +36.6^{\circ} (c=0.42, EtOH)$ IR (Nujol): 3220,  $2380 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.0-1.4 (1H, m), 1.7-2.1 (2H, m), 2.2-2.4 (1H, m), 2.5-2.7 (2H, m), 2.8-3.2 (3H, m), 4.24 (2H, br s), 6.52 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.89 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.5 (3H, m), 7.5-7.7 (2H, m), 9.2-9.5 (2H, br m), 9.24 (1H, s)MASS (m/z): 267

#### Preparation 18

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 17-1).

(R)-8-Benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-

benzocyclohepten-2-ol MASS (m/z): 267

# Preparation 19

To a mixture of (R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride (54% ee by chiral HPLC analysis; 13.8 g), N-benzyloxycarbonyl-D-leucine (20.9 g), N-hydroxybenzotriazole (10.6 g), and N,N-dimethylformamide (276 ml) was added

1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (12.2 g).
After stirring for 3 hours at ambient temperature, the
mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was
diluted with methylene chloride, and successively washed
with water, 3N hydrochloric acid, saturated aqueous sodium

bicarbonate and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. Recrystallization of the residue from ethyl acetate gave the crude product, which was further purified by recrystallization from ethanol to give a mixture of the diastereoisomers of (6R)-

and (6S)-N-(N-benzyloxycarbonyl-D-leucyl)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (15.0 g).

mp: 158-159°C

IR (Nujol): 3300, 1680, 1640  $cm^{-1}$ 

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 0.87 (12H, d, J=6Hz), 1.3-1.8 (12H, m), 1.8-2.0 (4H, m), 2.6-3.1 (8H, m), 3.74 (3H, s), 3.75 (3H, s), 3.9-4.3 (4H, m), 4.9-5.2 (4H, m), 5.5-5.7 (1H, m), 5.7-5.9 (1H, m), 6.6-6.75 (4H, m), 6.9-7.1 (2H, m), 7.2-7.5 (10H, m)

MASS (m/z): 438

# Preparation 20

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 19.

35 (6R)- and (6S)-N-(N-Benzyloxycarbonyl-L-leucyl)-3-

methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine
mp: 168-173°C
IR (Nujol): 3280, 1685, 1635 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 0.87 (12H, d, J=6Hz), 1.3-1.8 (12H,
m), 1.8-2.0 (4H, m), 2.6-3.1 (8H, m), 3.74 (3H,
m), 3.75 (3H, m), 3.9-4.3 (4H, m), 4.9-5.25 (5H,
m), 5.6-5.9 (1H, m), 6.55-6.75 (4H, m), 6.9-7.1
(2H, m), 7.2-7.4 (10H, m)

# 10 Preparation 21

A mixture of (6R)- and (6S)-N-(N-benzyloxycarbonyl-D-leucyl)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (6R:6S = 77:23; 20 g), ammonium formate (11.5 g), 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet; 4.0 g), and ethanol (450 ml) was refluxed for 0.5 hour. After 15 cooling, the catalyst was filtered off, and washed with ethanol. The filtrate and washings were combined and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, and washed with saturated aqueous sodium 20 bicarbonate and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to give a mixture of the diastereoisomers of (6R)- and (6S)-N-D-leucyl-3methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (13.5 g). Optical resolution of the diastereoisomers was 25 performed by recrystallization from diisopropyl ether to give the (6R)-isomer (7.0 g; 92.8% de by HPLC analysis). A second crop of the product (1.8 g; 91.6% de) was obtained from the mother liquor after removal of the solvent followed by recrystallization from diisopropyl ether. Further product (0.61 g; 92.3% de) was obtained 30 from the second mother liquor after column chromatography on silica gel (230-400 mesh, gradient elution; 50:1 to 25:1 chloroform-isopropanol, then isopropanol) followed by recrystallization from diisopropyl ether. Then, the above crude (6R)-isomers were combined (9.4 g) and further 35

purified by recrystallization from diisopropyl ether to give (6R)-N-D-leucyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (7.9 g; 95.2% de).

# Preparation 22

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 21.

(6S)-N-L-Leucyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine

```
20 mp: 117-118^{\circ}C
[\alpha]_{D}^{27} = -5.4^{\circ} \text{ (c=0.66, EtOH)}
IR (Nujol): 3380, 3320, 1610 \text{ cm}^{-1}
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 0.8-1.0 \text{ (6H, m)}, 1.2-1.4 \text{ (1H, m)}, 1.33 \text{ (2H, br s)}, 1.5-1.8 \text{ (4H, m)}, 1.8-2.1 \text{ (2H, m)}, 2.7-2.8 \text{ (2H, m)}, 2.8-3.1 \text{ (2H, m)}, 3.2-3.4 \text{ (1H, m)}, 3.76 \text{ (3H, s)}, 4.0-4.2 \text{ (1H, m)}, 6.6-6.7 \text{ (2H, m)}, 6.9-7.1 \text{ (2H, m)}
MASS (m/z): 304
```

# 30 <u>Freparation 23</u>

A mixture of (6R)-N-D-leucyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (8.0 g) and 47% hydrobromic acid (262 ml) was stirred at 150°C for 15.5 hours. After cooling to ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was stored in the refrigerator overnight. The

precipitate formed was collected, washed with diisopropyl ether, and dried to give the hydrobromide of the desired product (2.9 g). This salt was neutralized with 28% ammonium hydroxide, and the mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was diluted with saturated aqueous 5 sodium bicarbonate, and the slurry was extracted three times with n-butanol. The combined organic layers were washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrate in vacuo to give (R)-8-amino-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-cyclohepten-2-ol. This material was 10 contaminated with ammonium bromide by NMR and IR analysis but could be used directly in the next reaction. Further product (3.46 g), which was also contaminated with ammonium bromide, was obtained from the mother liquor 15 after work-up in the similar manner as described above. Physical data are shown for the hydrobromide of the product.

mp : 298-299°C 
[ $\alpha$ ] $_{D}^{27}$  = -24.6° (c=0.55, EtOH)

IR (Nujol) : 3400, 1610, 1580 cm $^{-1}$ NMR (DMSO-d $_{6}$ ,  $\delta$ ) : 1.1-2.2 (4H, m), 2.5-3.2 (5H, m), 6.4-6.6 (2H, m), 6.85-6.95 (1H, m), 7.85 (3H, br s), 9.20 (1H, s)

MASS (m/z) : 177

25

### Preparation 24

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 23.

30 (S)-8-Amino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol hydrobromide mp: 297-299°C [ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>21</sup> = +24.6° (c=0.65, EtOH) IR (Nujol): 3400, 1610, 1580 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, ô): 1.1-2.2 (4H, m), 2.5-3.2 (5H, m), 6.4-6.6 (2H, m), 6.85-6.95 (1H, m), 7.85 (3H, br s), 9.20 (1H, s)

MASS (m/z): 177

# 5 Preparation 25

A mixture of (R)-8-amino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-2-ol (5.8 g; contaminated with ammonium bromide), benzaldehyde (5.3 ml), acetic acid (0.15 ml), 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet; 1.1 g), and ethanol (260 ml) was stirred under hydrogen for 1 hour, and then an 10 additional portion of benzaldehyde (5.3 ml) was added. After aging for 0.5 hour, hydrogen was introduced to the reaction mixture and stirring was continued for an additional 3 hours. To the reaction mixture was added an additional portion of acetic acid (0.15 ml), and the 15 mixture was stirred under 1 atm of hydrogen for an additional 1 hour. The catalyst was filtered off, and washed with ethanol. Removal of the solvent in vacuo afforded the residue, which was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate 20 and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution; chloroform, then 100:1 to 50:1 to 10:1 25 chloroform-methanol) to give (R)-8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol (6.6 g). Physical data are shown for the hydrochloride of the product, which was recrystallized from 3:1 diisopropyl ether-ethanol.

mp : 234-235°C [ $\alpha$ ] $_{D}^{27} = -34.5$ ° (c=0.51, EtOH)
IR (Nujol) : 3250, 2400 cm $^{-1}$ NMR (DMSO-d $_{6}$ ,  $\delta$ ) : 1.0-1.4 (1H, m), 1.7-2.1 (2H, m), 2.2-2.4 (1H, m), 2.5-2.7 (2H, m), 2.8-3.2 (3H, m), 4.24 (2H, br s), 6.52 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, J=8Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.89 (1H, d,

J=8Hz), 7.3-7.5 (3H, m), 7.5-7.7 (2H, m), 9.2-9.5 (2H, br m), 9.24 (1H, s)

MASS (m/z): 267

# 5 Preparation 26

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 25.

(S)-8-Benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-2-ol hydrochloride mp: 233-235°C

### Preparation 27

A mixture of N-benzyl-3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-amine (2.8 g), formic acid (8 ml) and
acetic anhydride (16 ml) was stirred at ambient
temperature for 15 hours. The reaction mixture was poured
into an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate, and
extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The extract was dried
over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo to
give N-benzyl-N-formyl-3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-amine (2.71 g).

mp : 126-128°C

IR (Nujol) : 1650, 1510 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ) : 1.20-1.50 (1H, m), 1.85-2.40 (3H, m), 2.60-2.95 (3H, m), 3.15-3.70 (2H, m), 4.36 (0.5H, d, J=15.5Hz), 4.49 (0.5H, d, J=15Hz), 4.52 (0.5H, d, J=15.5Hz), 4.76 (0.5H, d, J=15Hz), 7.10-7.47 (6H, m), 7.65-7.78 (1H, m), 7.90-8.15 (1H, m), 8.31 (0.5H, s), 8.42 (0.5H, s)

MASS (m/z) : 324

#### Preparation 28

N-Benzyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-

benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride (6.0 g) was neutralized with 7% ammonium hydroxide and the mixture was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and 5 concentrated in vacuo to afford an oil (5.29 g). was dissolved in 1-propanol (10 ml) and the solution was added to a hot solution of D-(-)-tartaric acid (3.1 g) in 1-propanol (50 ml). After cooling, precipitated crystals were filtered. The crystals were recrystallized twice with additional D-(-)-tartaric acid (the first 0.7 g, the 10 second 68 mg) from 1-propanol to give (S)-N-benzyl-3methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (D)-tartrate (1:1) (1.7 g). Enantiomeric excess (100 %) was determined with two chiral columns (CHIRALCEL, OD). HPLC conditions are as follow, eluent:hexane-2-propanol 15 (9:1); flow rate 0.6 ml/min, column temperature 25°C, detective wavelength 220 nm. The retention time was 24.6 minutes.

mp : 152-153°C [ $\alpha$ ] $_{D}^{24}$  = +18.6° (c=0.79, DMSO) IR (Nujol) : 3520, 3300, 1730, 1620 cm $^{-1}$ NMR (DMSO- $d_{6}$ ,  $\delta$ ) : 1.1-1.4 (1H, m), 1.65-2.05 (2H, m), 2.1-2.3 (1H, m), 2.55-3.15 (5H, m), 3.71 (3H, s), 3.99 (2H, s), 4.07 (1H, d, J=13.5Hz), 4.17 (1H, d, J=13.5Hz), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=2.7Hz, 8.2Hz), 6.80 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 7.00 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.3-7.6 (5H, m)

# Preparation 29

A mixture of N-benzyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (68.7 g), ammonium formate (68.15 g), and 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet; 6.8 g) in ethanol (1.2 l) was refluxed for 1 hour. After cooling, the catalyst was filtered off and the solvent was removed in vacuo. To the residue, water and 28% ammonium

10

15

hydroxide were added and the whole was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo to give 3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (35.8 g) as an oil.

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.38-2.10 (4H, m), 1.45 (2H, br s), 2.6-3.06 (5H, m), 3.77 (3H, s), 6.64 (1H, dd, J=2.7Hz, 8.1Hz), 6.71 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz)

MASS (m/z): 191

## Preparation 30

The following compound was obtained by reacting the compound, which was prepared according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 29, with hydrogen chloride.

3-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-5,6,7,8,9,10-hexahydrobenzo-cycloocten-6-amine hydrochloride

IR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): 1760, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 0.9-1.9 (6H, m), 1.21 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.5-3.6 (5H, m), 4.17 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.7-6.9 (2H, m), 7.0-7.1 (1H, m), 8.20 (3H, br s)

MASS (m/z): 277 (M-HCl)<sup>+</sup>

25

## Preparation 31

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 29.

1580, 1205, 1180 cm<sup>-1</sup>

2-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-7-amine
IR (Film): 3610, 3360, 3300, 3180, 1755, 1610,

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.15-1.3 (2H, m), 1.30 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.41 (2H, br s), 2.0-2.15 (2H, m),

2.65-2.75 (4H, m), 2.9-3.05 (1H, m), 4.27 (2H, quartet, J=7.1Hz), 4.59 (2H, s), 6.62 (1H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.6Hz), 6.72 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz), 7.01 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz)

MASS (m/z): 263  $(M^+)$ , 248, 246, 161 (base)

# Preparation 32

ethyl acetate (300 ml) was added a solution of

3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine
(35.8 g) in ethyl acetate (150 ml). After cooling,
precipitated crystals were filtered. The crystals were
recrystallized from a mixture of ethyl acetate and ethanol
(2:1) to give (R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-amine (D)-mandelate (23.4 g).
Enantiomeric excess (54%) was determined with a chiral
column (ULTRON ES-OVM). HPLC conditions are as follow,
eluent: 0.02M phosphorics in the column of the column (Column and Column are as follow).

column (ULTRON ES-OVM). HPLC conditions are as follow eluent: 0.02M phosphoric acid buffer (pH 6.5) - acetonitrile (9:1), flow rate (1.0 ml/min, column temperature 25°C, detective wavelength 220 nm. The retention time was 11.8 minutes.

retention time was 11.8 minutes. The two filtrates were combined and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was converted to its (L)-mandelate in a usual manner. The crystals were recrystallized from a mixture of ethyl

acetate and ethanol (2:1) to give (S)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (L)-mandelate (17.98 g). Enantiomeric excess (70%) was determined with the same column and conditions. The retention time was 7.9 minutes.

Preparation 33

A solution of benzylamine (8.18 g) in benzene (100 ml) was added dropwise to a suspension of 8,9-dihydro-3-nitro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-one (15.51 g) in ethanol (155 ml) at ambient temperature over 20 minutes. The resulting

25

iΟ

mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 3 hours 30 minutes, allowed to stand at the same temperature overnight, and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated in vacuo to afford 7-benzylamino-3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-one (25.41 g) as a dark brown oil.

IR (Film): 3330, 1680, 1515, 1350 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.75-1.95 (2H, m), 2.1-2.3 (1H, m), 2.9-3.15 (3H, m), 3.2-3.4 (2H, m), 3.81 (1H, d, J=13.2Hz), 3.91 (1H, d, J=13.2Hz), 7.25-7.45 (6H, m), 8.23 (1H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.4Hz), 8.60 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz)

### Preparation 34

An aqueous solution (92 ml) of sodium borohydride 15 (18.29 g) was added dropwise to a stirred solution of 7-benzylamino-3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-5-one (25.01 g) at ambient temperature over 20 minutes. The resulting mixture was stirred for 4 hours and allowed to stand overnight at the same 20 temperature and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was diluted with water and extracted twice with dichloromethane. The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, treated with 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate, and evaporated in vacuo. 25 residue was suspended in methanol and filtered. filtrate was evaporated in vacuo, diluted with ammonia aqueous solution, and extracted twice with dichloromethane. The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, and chromatographed over 30 silica gel using dichloromethane-methanol. The eluate was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was washed with diethyl ether to afford 7-benzylamino-3-nitro-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-ol (7.33 g) as a dark yellow powder (diastereomers mixture).

35 mp : 109-120°C

10

15

25

30

bisulfate (13.0 g) was heated at 210°C for 20 minutes and suspended in a mixture of dichloromethane (150 ml), water (100 ml), and 28% ammonia solution. The suspension was filtered. The dichloromethane layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, evaporated in vacuo, and chromatographed over silica gel using

dichloromethane-methanol as an eluent. The first eluate afforded N-benzyl-6,7-dihydro-2-nitro-5H-benzocyclohepten-7-amine (3.11 g) as a dark brown solid.

mp: 62.5-69°C

IR (Nujol): 3310, 1660, 1580, 1520, 1340 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 2.0 (1H, br), 2.0-2.15 (2H, m),
2.8-2.95 (2H, m), 3.45-3.55 (1H, m), 3.89 (2H,
s), 6.11 (1H, dd, J=12.2Hz, 4.2Hz), 6.50 (1H,
dd, J=12.2Hz, 1.6Hz), 7.2-7.4 (6H, m), 7.97 (1H,
dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.4Hz), 8.04 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz)

MASS (m/z): 294  $(M^+)$ , 203, 91 (base)

The second eluate afforded 6,7-dihydro-2-nitro-5H-benzocyclohepten-7-amine (95 mg) as an oil.

IR (Film): 3350, 3280, 3170, 1610, 1580, 1510, 1340 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.58 (2H, br s), 1.85-2.1 (2H, m),

10

15

20

25

30

35

2.85-2.95 (2H, m), 3.71 (1H, m), 6.01 (1H, dd, J=12.2Hz, 4.0Hz), 6.42 (1H, dd, J=12.2Hz, 1.6Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.97 (1H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.4Hz), 8.04 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz)

MASS (m/z): 204 (M<sup>+</sup>, base)

# Preparation 36

A solution of N-benzyl-6,7-dihydro-2-nitro-5H-benzocyclohepten-7-amine (3.03 g) in ethanol (19 ml) and dioxane (19 ml) was added dropwise to a stirred mixture of iron powder (3.03 g) and ammonium chloride (0.36 g), in ethanol (15 ml), dioxane (15 ml), and water (15 ml) under reflux over 20 minutes. The resulting mixture was stirred under reflux for 20 minutes and the hot reaction mixture was filtered. The filtrate was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and sodium bicarbonate aqueous solution. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, evaporated in vacuo, and chromatographed over silica gel using dichloromethane and methanol to afford N<sup>7</sup>-benzyl-6,7-dihydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2,7-diamine (2.52 g) as a brown oil.

IR (Film): 3440, 3350, 3220, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.57 (1H, br), 1.95-2.1 (2H, m), 2.6-2.8 (2H, m), 3.4-3.6 (3H, m), 3.85 (2H, s), 5.92 (1H, dd, J=12.0Hz, 4.0Hz), 6.32 (1H, dd, J=12.0Hz, 1.8Hz), 6.4-6.55 (2H, m), 6.92 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.2-7.4 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 264 (M<sup>+</sup>), 157 (base), 91

Preparation 37

Sodium nitrite (609 mg) aqueous solution (6 ml) was added dropwise to a stirred suspension of N<sup>7</sup>-benzyl-6,7-dihydro-5H-benzocycloheptene-2,7-diamine (2.22 g) in 6N sulfuric acid (22 ml) under ice cooling over 15 minutes

10

25

30

35

and the resulting solution was stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes. The solution was added dropwise to a stirred solution of sulfuric acid (3 ml) in water (15 ml) at 75°C over 15 minutes. The resulting mixture was stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes, cooled with ice-water bath, basified with 28% ammonia solution (15 ml), and extracted six times with dichloromethane. The combined extracts were evaporated in vacuo and chromatographed over silica gel using dichloromethane and methanol to afford 7-benzylamino-6,7-dihydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-ol (1.72 g) as a pale brown oil.

IR (Film): 3270, 2650, 2550, 1600, 1570 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.95-2.15 (2H, m), 2.6-2.8 (2H, m), 3.30 (1H, br), 3.45-3.55 (1H, m), 3.83 (1H, d, J=13.2Hz), 3.90 (1H, d, J=13.2Hz), 5.92 (1H, dd, J=12.2Hz, 4.0Hz), 6.31 (1H, dd, J=12.2Hz, 1.8Hz), 6.5-6.65 (2H, m), 6.96 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.2-7.35 (6H, m)

MASS (m/z): 265 (M<sup>+</sup>), 158 (base), 91

### Preparation 38

To a solution of 6-chloro-2-pyridylaldehyde (2.0 g) in diethyl ether (20 ml), a solution of methyl magnesium bromide in diethyl ether (3M, 5.65 ml) was added at 0°C under nitrogen atmosphere and stirred for 1.5 hours. Saturated ammonium chloride solution (30 ml) was added to the solution and the organic layer was separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with diethyl ether. The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by distillation under reduced pressure to give 1-(6-chloro-2-pyridyl)ethanol (2.13 g). bp: 140-145°C/5 mmHq

IR (Neat): 3375, 1585, 1560, 1435, 1410 cm<sup>-1</sup>

```
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>-D<sub>2</sub>O, \delta): 1.52 (3H, d, J=6.6Hz), 4.87 (1H, q, J=6.6Hz), 7.20-7.34 (2H, m), 7.66 (1H, t, J=7.8Hz)

MASS (m/z): 156 (M<sup>+</sup>), 142, 114, 78
```

10

### Preparation 39

A mixture of 1-(6-chloro-2-pyridyl)ethanol (2.13 g) and manganese dioxide (8.4 g) in chloroform (21 ml) was refluxed for 8 hours. After cooling, the mixture was filtered through celite pad and the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by distillation under reduced pressure to give 2-acetyl-6-chloropyridine (1.84 g).

20

### Preparation 40

A solution of 2-acetyl-6-chloropyridine (7.48 g) in 1,4-dioxane (112 ml) was added 4N hydrogen chloride in 1,4-dioxane (12.6 ml). To the solution, sulfuryl chloride (13.51 ml) was added dropwise at 30°C. After stirring for 0.5 hour, ice water (150 ml) was added to the solution and the organic layer was separated, washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with a mixture of n-hexane and toluene (1:1) as an eluent to give chloromethyl 6-chloro-2-pyridyl ketone (7.05 g) as a powder.

mp : 61-62°C IR (Nujol) :  $1720 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 5.07 (2H, s), 7.57 (1H, dd, J=1.0Hz, 7.9Hz), 7.86 (1H, pseudo t, J=7.7Hz), 8.03 (1H, dd, J=1.0Hz, 7.6Hz).

# Preparation 41

5 A solution of chloromethyl 6-chloro-2-pyridyl ketone (8.126 g) in tetrahydrofuran (32 ml) and a solution of borane in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 25.7 ml) were added simultaneously to a mixture of a solution (R)-tetrahydro-3,3-diphenyl-1H,3H-pyrrolo[1,2-c][1,3,2]oxazaborole in tetrahydrofuran (ca. 0.335 M, 8.9 ml) and a 10 solution of borane in tetrahydrofuran (1.0 M, 4.3 ml) at -5°C under nitrogen atmosphere over 0.5 hour and the whole was stirred for 3.5 hours. Methanol (10.4 ml) was added dropwise to the mixture at 0°C and the whole was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The mixture was 15 evaporated in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 1N hydrochloric acid. organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer 20 was washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with chloroform as an eluent to give (-)-2-chloro-1-(6-chloro-2-pyridyl)ethanol (7.98 g) as an oil. 25

 $[\alpha]_D^{32} = -16.3^{\circ} (c=0.81, CH_2Cl_2)$ 

### Preparation 42

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 41.

(-)-2-Chloro-1-(2-naphthyl)ethanol mp: 93-94°C

 $[\alpha]_D = -40.09^{\circ} (c=1.07, CH_2Cl_2)$ IR (Nujol) : 3210 cm<sup>-1</sup>

35 NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 2.80 (1H, br), 3.5-3.9 (2H, m),

5.05 (1H, dd, J=3.6Hz, 8.5Hz), 7.4-7.5 (3H, m), 7.8 (4H, m)

# Preparation 43

A mixture of (-)-2-chloro-1-(6-chloro-2-pyridyl)ethanol (1.028 g), isopropenyl acetate (1.8 ml), and
lipase PS Amano (2.06 g) in dry diisopropyl ether (31 ml)
was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 days. The
insoluble material was filtered off and the filtrate was
evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column
chromatography on silica gel with chloroform as an eluent
to give (-)-2-chloro-1-(6-chloro-2-pyridyl)ethanol (0.40
g).

[ $\alpha$ ] $_{D}^{28.8}$  = -30.0° (c=0.935, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) IR (Neat) : 3375, 1580, 1560 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 3.54 (1H, d, J=6.3Hz), 3.80 (1H, dd, J=6.1Hz, 11.1Hz), 3.91 (1H, dd, J=4.8Hz, 11.1Hz), 4.90-5.04 (1H, m), 7.29 (1H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.40 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz), 7.71 (1H, pseudo t, J=7.7Hz)

#### Preparation 44

A mixture of (-)-2-chloro-1-(6-chloro-2-pyridyl)ethanol (390 mg), 2M sodium hydroxide solution (3.9 ml),
and diethyl ether (0.2 ml) was stirred at ambient
temperature for 3 hours. To the mixture, brine and ethyl
acetate were added. The organic layer was separated,
washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate,
and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by
column chromatography on silica gel with chloroform as an
eluent to give (-)-1-(6-chloro-2-pyridyl)ethane-1,2epoxide (259 mg) as an oil.

 $[\alpha]_D^{30.8} = -34.4^{\circ} (c=0.57, CH_2Cl_2)$ IR (Neat): 1590, 1560, 1540, 1420 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 2.88 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, 5.8Hz), 3.18

25

```
(1H, dd, J=4.1Hz, 5.8Hz), 3.99 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz)
                   4.1Hz), 7.16 (1H, dd, J=0.7Hz, 7.6Hz), 7.27 (1H,
                   dd, J=0.7Hz, 7.9Hz), 7.65 (1H, pseudo t,
                   J=7.7Hz)
   5
             MASS (m/z): 156 (M^{+})
        Preparation 45
             The following compound was obtained according to a
        similar manner to that of Preparation 44.
 10
             (+)-2-Naphthyl oxirane
             mp : 75-76°C
             [\alpha]_D = +34.17^{\circ} \text{ (c=1.03, toluene)}
             IR (Nujol): 1265, 1240, 820, 740 cm<sup>-1</sup>
 15
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 2.89 (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz, 5.5Hz), 3.20
                  (1H, dd, J=4.1Hz, 5.5Hz), 4.01 (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz,
                  4.1Hz), 7.31 (1H, dd, J=1.7Hz, 8.5Hz), 7.4-7.5
                  (2H, m), 7.8 (4H, m)
            MASS (m/z): 170 (M^+) and 141
 20
       Preparation 46
            To a suspension of 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-
       5H-benzocyclohepten-5-one (7.0 g) in methanol (70 ml),
       sodium borohydride (1.29 g) was added portionwise at
25
       21-30°C and the whole was stirred for 1 hour.
       solution was poured into ice water (210 ml) and the
      resulting precipitate was collected by filtration, washed
      with water and dried to give 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-
      5H-benzocyclohepten-5-ol (6.81 g).
30
           mp: 116-118°C
           IR (Nujol): 3260, 3160, 1520, 1340 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.25-2.18 (7H, m), 2.66-3.10
                 (2H, m), 4.89-5.06 (1H, m), 7.23 (1H, d,
                J=8.2Hz), 7.99 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, 8.2Hz), 8.38
35
                (1H, d, J=2.5Hz)
```

10

15

20

### Preparation 47

A mixture of 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-ol (70.67 g) and potassium hydrogensulfate (53.00 g) was heated at 160°C for 1 hour. After cooling, to the mixture was added a mixture of water (400 ml) and ethyl acetate (400 ml). The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (200 ml). The combined organic layer was washed with brine (150 ml), dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with a mixture of n-hexane and chloroform (1:1) as an eluent to give 2-nitro-6,7-dihydro-5H-benzocycloheptene (48.1 g).

mp: 43°C

IR (Nujol): 1520, 1340, 1280, 1085, 930, 900, 835, 760, 740 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.88-2.10 (2H, m), 2.40-2.59 (2H, m), 2.83-3.03 (2H, m), 6.06 (1H, dt, J=12.2Hz, 4.5Hz, 4.5Hz), 6.45 (1H, dt, J=12.2Hz, 2.0Hz, 2.0Hz), 7.22 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.93 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, 8.2Hz), 8.00 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz)

### Preparation 48

A mixture of 2-nitro-6,7-dihydro-5H-benzocycloheptene (48.10 g) and m-chloroperbenzoic acid (80%, 65.75 g) in chloroform (962 ml) was refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, 1N sodium hydroxide solution (350 ml) was added to the mixture. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with chloroform. The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over sodium sulfate and silica gel (100 g) was added to the mixture. The insoluble material was filtered off and the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo to afford 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5,6-epoxide (53.90 g).

35 mp : 62-64°C

WO 93/15041 - 71 - PCT/JP93/00113

IR (Nujol) : 1610, 1580, 1520, 1340 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ) : 1.43-2.32 (4H, m), 2.82-3.08 (2H, m), 3.35-3.54 (1H, m), 4.06 (1H, d, J=4.2Hz),
7.26 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 8.08 (1H, dd, J=2.4Hz, 8.3Hz), 8.37 (1H, d, J=2.4Hz)

### Preparation 49

5

10

15

20

A solution of 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5,6-epoxide (53.9 g) in benzene (540 ml) was added to zinc iodide (41.9 g) at ambient temperature under nitrogen atmosphere and the whole was stirred for 1 day. To the mixture, silica gel (50 g) was added and the insoluble material was filtered off. The filtrate was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with chloroform as an eluent to give 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-one (33.83 g).

mp: 84-86°C

IR (Nujol): 1700, 1550, 1505, 1340 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.95-2.17 (2H, m), 2.55-2.71 (2H, m), 3.00-3.16 (2H, m), 3.83 (2H, s), 7.34 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 8.01-8.17 (2H, m)

### Preparation 50

25 A mixture of 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-one (0.20 g), iron powder (218 mg),
ammonium chloride (52 mg), water (1.2 ml) and ethanol (4
ml) was refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the
insoluble material was filtered off and the filtrate was
evaporated in vacuo. To the residue was added ethyl
acetate and water. The organic layer was separated and
the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The
combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over
anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The
residue was purified by column chromatography on silica

gel with chloroform as an eluent to give 3-amino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-one (153 mg).

IR (CHCl<sub>3</sub>): 3375, 1690, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, S): 1.90-2.06 (2H, m), 2.48-2.66 (2H, m), 2.77-2.94 (2H, m), 3.62 (2H, s), 6.45-6.60 (2H, m), 6.93 (1H, d, J=8.6Hz)

### Preparation 51

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 50.

N-Benzyl-N-formyl-(3-amino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amine

IR (Neat): 3680, 3450, 3390, 1660 cm<sup>-1</sup>

Conformer A: NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>-D<sub>2</sub>O,  $\delta$ ): 1.14-1.46 (1H, m), 1.78-2.20 (3H, m), 2.39-2.73 (3H, m), 3.04-3.88 (2H, m), 4.36-4.78 (2H, m), 6.26-6.90 (3H, m), 7.20-7.44 (5H, m), 8.27 (1H, s)

Conformer B: NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>-D<sub>2</sub>O,  $\delta$ ): 1.14-1.46 (1H, m), 1.78-2.20 (3H, m), 2.39-2.73 (3H, m), 3.04-3.88 (2H, m), 4.36-4.78 (2H, m), 6.26-6.90 (3H, m), 7.20-7.44 (5H, m), 8.39 (1H, s)

Conformer A: Conformer B = 1:2.3

MASS (m/z): 294 (M<sup>+</sup>), 159, 144, 131, 91

Preparation 52

25

30

35

To a solution of 3-amino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-one (9.42 g) in a mixture of acetic acid (1.85 ml), conc. sulfuric acid (9.24 ml) and water (24.56 ml) was added portionwise a solution of sodium nitrate (4.08 g) in water (6.00 ml) with ice salt bath cooling and the whole was stirred for 1 hour. The solution was added to a solution of cuprous bromide (10.02 g) and sodium bromide (9.40 g) in a mixture of 47% hydrobromic acid (27.72 ml) and water (61.52 ml) at 75°C

10

<u>i</u>5

and the whole was stirred for 0.5 hour. After cooling, ice water (100 ml) and chloroform (200 ml) were added to the mixture. The insoluble material was filtered off. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with chloroform. The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and treated with active carbon (0.65 g). The solution was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with toluene as an eluent to give 3-bromo-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-one (6.34 g).

mp : 51-59°C

IR (Nujol) : 1700 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ) : 1.89-2.08 (2H, m), 2.47-2.65 (2H, m), 2.83-3.00 (2H m), 3.68 (2H c), 7.03 (1H m), 2.83-3.00 (2H m), 3.68 (2H c), 7.03 (1H m), 3.68 (2H c), 7.03 (2H m), 7

m), 2.83-3.00 (2H, m), 3.68 (2H, s), 7.03 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.31 (1H, d, J=2.0Hz), 7.33 (1H, dd, J=7.7Hz, 2.0Hz)

### Preparation 53

20 A mixture of 3-bromo-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-one (2.00 g), ethyl acrylate (1.26 g), palladium acetate (94 mg), tris(2-methylphenyl)phosphine (764 mg), triethylamine (1.69 g) in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 ml) was stirred at 100°C for 20 hours under nitrogen atmosphere. After cooling, ice water (20 ml) was added to 25 the mixture. The resulting precipitates were collected by filtration and the powder was dissolved in ethyl acetate (20 ml). The solution was washed with water (20 ml) three times, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate and evaporated 30 in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with chloroform as an eluent to give ethyl (E)-3-(8-oxo-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-2-yl)acrylate (1.34 g).

mp: 87-88°C

35 IR (Nujol): 1705, 1690 cm<sup>-1</sup>

10

15

30

25

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.34 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.91-2.12 (2H, m), 2.52-2.67 (2H, m), 2.89-3.07 (2H, m), 3.74 (2H, s), 4.26 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 6.40 (1H, d, J=16.0Hz), 7.18 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 7.32 (1H, d, J=1.0Hz), 7.36 (1H, dd, J=7.7Hz, 1.0Hz), 7.64 (1H, d, J=16.0Hz)

#### Preparation 54

A solution of ethyl (E)-3-(8-oxo-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yl)acrylate (400 mg) in ethanol (8 ml) was hydrogenated over 10% palladium on carbon (24 mg). After removing the catalyst, the solution was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with a mixture of n-hexane and ethyl acetate (10:1) as an eluent to give ethyl 3-(8-oxo-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yl)-propionate (311 mg).

mp: 66-68°C

IR (Nujol): 1720, 1695 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.23 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.91-2.08

(2H, m), 2.48-2.70 (4H, m), 2.80-3.02 (4H, m),

3.70 (2H, s), 4.13 (2H, q, J=7.1HZ), 6.96-7.06

(3H, m)

#### 25 Preparation 55

A solution of N-benzyl-N-formyl-(3-amino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amine (0.80 g) in formic acid (16 ml) was refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the solution was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and the solution was washed successively with 1N sodium hydroxide solution, 1N hydrochloric acid, and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with a mixture of chloroform and methanol (20:1) as an eluent to

15

20

```
give N-benzyl-N-formyl-(3-formylamino-6,7,8,9-

tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amine (0.84 g).

IR (CHCl<sub>3</sub>): 3660, 3425, 3400, 1690, 1660 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.16-1.49 (1H, m), 1.80-2.30 (3H,

m), 2.42-2.82 (3H, m), 3.07-3.90 (3H, m),

4.28-4.86 (2H, m), 6.50-7.20 (3H, m), 7.20-7.46

(5H, m), 7.66-7.93 (1H, m), 8.25-8.66 (2H, m)

MASS (m/z): 322 (M<sup>+</sup>), 187, 172, 159
```

### 10 Preparation 56

Sodium hydride (60% dispersion in oil, 100 mg) was washed with petroleum ether and a solution of N-benzyl-N-formyl-(3-formylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amine (675 mg) in tetrahydrofuran (10 ml) was added thereto with ice bath cooling. After stirring for 20 minutes, a solution of ethyl bromoacetate (0.28 ml) in tetrahydrofuran (1 ml) was added to the mixture and stirred for 1 hour. To the mixture, an aqueous saturated ammonium chloride solution was added.

- The organic layer was separated and washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with a mixture of chloroform and methanol (50:1) as an eluent to give ethyl N-[(8-N-
- benzylformylamino)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yl]formylaminoacetate (752 mg).

```
IR (CHCl<sub>3</sub>): 2940, 1745, 1665 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.28 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.22-1.50 (1H, m), 1.83-2.84 (6H, m), 3.09-3.76 (2H, m), 4.20 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.28-4.86 (4H, m), 6.64-7.15 (3H, m), 7.21-7.46 (5H, m), 8.24-8.46 (2H, m)

MASS (m/z): 408 (M<sup>+</sup>), 307, 273, 245, 172
```

10

15

20

#### Preparation 57

A mixture of ethyl N-[(8-N-benzylformylamino)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yl]formylaminoacetate (501 mg), 6N hydrochloric acid (6.1 ml) in ethanol (10 ml) was refluxed for 1 day. After cooling, the solution was poured into ice water (20 ml) and the pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with sodium hydroxide solution. The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel with a mixture of chloroform and ethanol (20:1) as an eluent to give ethyl [(8-benzylamino)-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yl]aminoacetate (217 mg). IR (Neat): 3400, 1735, 1610, 1585, 1510 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.29 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.34-2.09 (5H, m), 2.52-2.95 (5H, m), 3.82 (1H, s), 3.85 (1H, s), 3.88 (2H, d, J=5.3Hz), 4.15 (1H, t, J=5.3Hz), 4.24 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 6.35 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, 8.0Hz), 6.47 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.90

#### Preparation 58

A solution of (Z)-1-(3-methoxyphenyl)-2-nitroethene
(33.85 g) in 1,4-dioxane (315 ml) was added dropwise to an
efficiently stirred suspension of sodium borohydride
(15.77 g) in a mixture of 1,4-dioxane (315 ml) and ethanol
(98 ml) over a period of 0.5 hour while maintaining a
temperature of 30°C. After stirring for 2 hours, the
resultant slurry was diluted with ice water (393 ml) and
the excess sodium borohydride was decomposed with 50%
aqueous acetic acid (47.4 ml). To the solution, sodium
chloride (68 g) and ethyl acetate were added. The organic
layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted

(1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.17-7.36 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 352  $(M^+)$ , 219, 207, 146

10

with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by distillation under reduced pressure to give 1-methoxy-3-(2-nitroethyl)benzene (23.62 g).

bp : 104-107°C/1 mmHg. IR (Neat) : 1540, 1375 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 3.29 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.60 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 6.70-6.87 (3H, m), 7.19-7.33 (1H, m)

### Preparation 59

To a solution of 1-methoxy-3-(2-nitroethyl)benzene (22.59 g) and tert-butyl acrylate (15.98 g) in dichloromethane (180 ml) was added a solution of 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (1.90 g) in dichloromethane (45 ml) in an ice bath. After stirring for 18.5 hours at ambient temperature, ice water (70 ml) was added to the solution. The organic layer was separated, washed successively with 1N hydrochloric acid, and brine. The solution was treated with silica gel (70 g) and evaporated in vacuo to give tert-butyl 5-(3-methoxyphenyl)-4-nitrovalerate (29.39 g).

IR (Neat): 1720, 1600, 1545 cm<sup>-1</sup>

IR (Neat): 1720, 1600, 1545 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.37 (9H, s), 1.98-2.34 (4H, m),
2.94 (1H, dd, J=5.9Hz, 14.1Hz), 3.18 (1H, dd,
J=8.5Hz, 14.1Hz), 3.71 (3H, s), 4.64-4.83 (1H,
m), 6.61-6.75 (3H, m), 7.09-7.21 (1H, m)

MASS (m/z): 308 (M<sup>+</sup>-1)

Preparation 60

To a solution of tert-butyl 5-(3-methoxyphenyl)-4nitrovalerate (10.00 g) in 1,4-dioxane (10 ml) was added
4N hydrogen chloride in 1,4-dioxane (17.8 ml) in an ice
bath. After stirring for 3 days at ambient temperature,

15

20

25

30

ice water (60 ml) and sodium chloride (6 g) was added to the solution. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 9.5 with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate solution and the solution was washed with ethyl acetate. After the pH of the solution was adjusted to 1 with 6N hydrochloric acid, the solution was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, treated with silica gel (20 g), and evaporated in vacuo to give 5-(3-methoxyphenyl)-4-nitrovaleric acid (8.00 g).

IR (Neat): 2950-2300, 1700, 1540 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 2.03-2.57 (4H, m), 3.03 (1H, dd, J=6.1Hz, 14.1Hz), 3.28 (1H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 14.1Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 4.72-4.91 (1H, m), 6.68-6.90 (3H, m), 7.17-7.31 (1H, m)

MASS (m/z): 252 (M<sup>+</sup>-1)

#### Preparation 61

A mixture of 5-(3-methoxyphenyl)-4-nitrovaleric acid (1.00 g) and thionyl chloride (0.34 ml) in 1,2-dichloroethane (2 ml) was refluxed for 1 hour. After cooling, aluminum chloride (0.53 g) was added to the solution at -12°C and the whole was stirred for 0.5 hour. The solution was poured into ice water (15 ml). The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic layer was washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution, and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give 2-methoxy-8-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-one (772 mg).

mp : 120-122°C IR (Nujol) : 1665, 1590, 1545 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 2.21-2.55 (2H, m), 2.65-2.84 (1H, m), 2.93-3.14 (1H, m), 3.37 (1H, dd, J=5.6Hz, 14.6Hz), 3.62 (1H, dd, J=7.8Hz, 14.6Hz), 3.87 (3H, s), 4.85-5.03 (1H, m), 6.76 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.91 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, 8.7Hz), 7.82 (1H, d, J=8.7Hz)

5

### Preparation 62

To a solution of (S)-(-)-4-acetylamino-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)valeric acid (706 mg) in 1,2-dichloroethane, (2.1 ml) was added thionylchloride (0.25 ml) at 0°C and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours. 10 To the mixture, dichloromethane (2.1 ml) was added and then aluminum chloride (0.72 g) was added portionwise at -10°C. After stirring for 2 hours, the solution was poured into ice water and the solution was acidified with dil. hydrochloric acid. The solution was extracted with 15 dichloromethane. The extract was washed with saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. residue was crystallized from a mixture of n-hexane and 20 ethyl acetate to give (S)-(-)-8-acetoamino-2-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-one (329 mg) as a powder.

mp : 132°C  $[\alpha]_D^{21.1} = -97.2^\circ$  (c=0.51, MeOH)

IR (Nujol) : 3310, 1650, 1595 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 1.38-1.60 (1H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.10-2.32 (1H, m), 2.50-2.84 (2H, m), 2.90 (1H, dd, J=14.4Hz, 5.0Hz), 3.19 (1H, dd, J=14.4Hz, 5.2Hz), 3.86 (3H, s), 4.37-4.58 (1H, m), 5.53 (1H, d, J=7.5Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.87 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz), 8.6Hz)

## Preparation 63

A solution of 2-methoxy-8-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-one (0.20 g) in acetic acid (2 ml)

was hydrogenated at 4 atm hydrogen atmosphere over 10% palladium on carbon (0.20 g). After removing the catalyst, the pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with sodium hydroxide solution and the solution was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with brine, dried over potassium carbonate, and evaporated in vacuo to give 3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (153 mg).

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.38-2.10 (4H, m), 1.41 (2H, br s), 2.60-3.06 (5H, m), 3.77 (3H, s), 6.64 (1H, dd, J=8.1Hz, 2.7Hz), 6.71 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz)

#### Preparation 64

15 A mixture of tert-butyl 5-(3-methoxyphenyl)-4nitrovalerate (0.31 g), 10% palladium on carbon (0.31 g),
and ammonium formate (0.63 g) in methanol (3.1 ml) was
stirred at ambient temperature for 0.5 hour. After the
insoluble material was removed by filtration, the filtrate
20 was evaporated in vacuo. To the residue, ethyl acetate
and water were added and the organic layer was separated.
The aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate and the
combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over
anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give
tert-butyl 4-amino-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)valerate (245 mg).

IR (Neat) : 3455, 1620, 1600, 1580 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ) : 1.44 (9H, s), 1.51-1.95 (2H, m),
 2.05 (2H, br s), 2.21-2.47 (2H, m), 2.50 (1H,
 dd, J=8.6Hz, 13.3Hz), 2.80 (1H, dd, J=4.8Hz,
 13.3Hz), 3.80 (3H, s), 6.65-6.86 (3H, m),
 7.15-7.30 (1H, m)

MASS (m/z) : 280 (M<sup>+</sup>), 224

To a solution of tert-butyl 4-amino-5-(3methoxyphenyl)valerate (0.22 g) in 1,4-dioxane (0.2 ml),

acetic anhydride (0.08 ml) was added and the solution was stirred for 80 minutes. To the solution, ethanol was added and the solution was stirred for 15 minutes. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with sodium hydroxide solution and the solution was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give tert-butyl 4-acetylamino-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)valerate (246 mg).

IR (Neat): 3275, 3060 1720, 1640, 1540, 1365 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 6): 1.43 (9H, s), 1.52-1.90 (2H, m),
1.83 (3H, s), 2.15-2.42 (2H, m), 2.70 (1H, dd,
J=7.2Hz, 13.5Hz), 2.85 (1H, dd, J=5.6Hz,
13.5Hz), 3.79 (3H, s), 4.01-4.24 (1H, m), 5.56
(1H, br d, J=8.5Hz), 6.67-6.84 (3H, m),
7.15-7.28 (1H, m)

MASS (m/z): 322 (M<sup>+</sup>), 266, 206

#### Preparation 65

20 To a solution of tert-butyl 4-acetylamino-5-(3methoxyphenyl)valerate (508 mg) in 1,4-dioxane (2 ml), 4N hydrogen chloride in 1,4-dioxane (4 ml) was added and the solution was stirred for 1 hour. The solution was poured into ice water (6 ml) and the pH of the solution was adjusted to 12 with sodium hydroxide solution. 25 solution was washed successively with diisopropyl ether and ethyl acetate and the pH of the solution was adjusted to 1 with 6N hydrochloric acid. The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract was washed 30 with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give 4-acetylamino-5-(3methoxyphenyl)valeric acid (362 mg).

IR (Neat): 3300, 2950-2300, 1700 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.55-1.98 (2H, m), 1.93 (3H, s),

2.30-2.47 (2H, m), 2.65-2.92 (2H, m), 3.78 (3H,

s), 4.09-4.33 (1H, m), 5.88 (1H, br d, J=8.9Hz), 6.67-6.87 (3H, m), 7.13-7.26 (1H, m), 9.42 (1H, br s) MASS (m/z) : 266  $(M^{+}+1)$ 

5

10

### Preparation 66

A mixture of 4-acetylamino-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)valeric acid (151 mg) and (+)-cinchonine (110 mg) in 1,4-dioxane (2.6 ml) was refluxed and the solution was allowed to cool. The resulting precipitates were collected by filtration and dried to give a salt of (S)-4-acetylamino-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)valeric acid and (+)-cinchonin (117 This compound was recrystallized from 1,4-dioxane to give the pure salt (61 mg).

mp : 122-126°C 15  $[\alpha]_D^{23.2} = +123.3^{\circ} \text{ (c=1, EtOH)}$ IR (Nujol): 3250, 3180, 2725, 1660, 1590 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ ,  $\delta$ ): 1.29-2.00 (7H, m), 1.75 (3H, s), 2.02-2.39 (3H, m), 2.41-2.84 (5H, m), 2.90-3.15 20 (2H, m), 3.20-4.90 (1H, br m), 3.72 (3H, s), 3.78-4.04 (1H, m), 4.99-5.20 (2H, m), 5.28-5.45 (1H, m), 5.98-6.21 (1H, m), 6.68-6.85 (3H, m), 7.10-7.26 (1H, m), 7.49-7.82 (3H, m), 7.54 (1H, d, J=4.4Hz), 8.00 (1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 8.25 (1H, d, 25 J=8.4Hz), 8.83 (1H, d, J=4.4Hz)

#### Preparation 67

Salt of (S)-4-acetylamino-5-(3-methoxyphenyl)valeric acid and (+)-cinchonin (55.7 g) was suspended in ethyl acetate and the pH of the suspension was adjusted to 1 30 with dil. hydrochloric acid. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give (S)-(-)-4-acetylamino-5-(3-

```
methoxyphenyl)valeric acid (26.40 g).

mp: 66-70°C
[α]<sup>23.2</sup> = -4.3° (c=1.06, MeOH)
IR (Nujol): 3270, 1730, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.55-1.98 (2H, m), 1.92 (3H, s),
2.30-2.46 (2H, m), 2.64-2.92 (2H, m), 3.76 (3H, s), 4.08-4.30 (1H, m), 6.19 (1H, br d, J=8.8Hz),
6.67-6.85 (3H, m), 7.13-7.26 (1H, m), 9.82 (1H, br s)

Preparation 68
To a solution of (S)-(-)-8-acetoamino-2-methoxy-6.7.8.9-tetrahydro-FU bases 2.30
```

6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-5-one (1.20 g) in boron trifluoride ether complex (abt. 47%, 23.9 ml), triethylsilane (3.42 ml) was added at ambient temperature and the whole was stirred for 3 days. The solution was poured into ice water and the pH of the solution was made to 9 with sodium hydroxide solution. The mixture was extracted with chloroform and the extract was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was crystallized from n-hexane to give (S)-(-)-N-acetyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (1.09 g).

mp : 185°C  $[\alpha]_D^{21.2} = -45.0^{\circ} \text{ (c=0.51, MeOH)}$ IR (Nujol) : 3290, 1635 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 1.43-1.80 (2H, m), 1.85-2.00 (2H, m), 1.89 (3H, s), 2.64-2.82 (2H, m), 2.84 (1H, dd, J=13.8Hz, 7.8Hz), 3.02 (1H, dd, J=13.8Hz, 1.7Hz), 3.78 (3H, s), 4.13-4.31 (1H, m), 5.26 (1H, d, J=7.7Hz), 6.64-6.75 (2H, m), 7.02 (1H, d, J=8.9Hz)

# Preparation 69

A mixture of (S)-(-)-N-acetyl-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-

10

15

20

25

tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (0.75 g) and potassium hydroxide (15.84 g) in a mixture of water (11.2 ml) and methanol (45 ml) was refluxed for 3 days. cooling, the mixture was evaporated in vacuo. ethyl acetate were added to the residue. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer was washed with brine, dried over potassium carbonate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (0.71 ml) was added to the solution. The resulting precipitates were collected by filtration and dried to give (S)-(+)-3methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride (606 mg) as a colorless powder.  $[\alpha]_{D}^{18.0} = +30.3^{\circ} \text{ (c=1.49, MeOH)}$ 

#### Preparation 70

To a solution of 7-methoxy-1-tetralone (50 g) and trimethylsulfonium iodide (69.48 g) in dimethyl sulfoxide (330 ml) was added dropwise a solution of potassium tert-butoxide (38.21 g) in dimethyl sulfoxide (165 ml) at 24°C-28°C. The mixture was stirred for 1 hour at ambient temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into cooled water (500 ml) and extracted with ethyl acetate (500 ml). The organic layer was separated, washed with water (500 ml, three times), dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give crude spiro[3,4-dihydro-7-methoxynaphthalene-1(2H),2'-oxirane] (48.15 g) as a pale yellow oil.

# Preparation 71

To a solution of benzylamine (22.53 g) in 1-propanol (120 ml) was added dropwise a solution of spiro[3,4-dihydro-7-methoxynaphthalene-1(2H),2'-oxirane] (40.0 g) in 1-propanol (40 ml) under gentle reflux. The reaction mixture was gently refluxed for 4 hours. The solvent was removed and ethyl acetate (200 ml) was added to the residue. The ethyl acetate extract was washed with water (200 ml, four times), dried over sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was treated with 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate to give 1-benzylaminomethyl-7-methoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-naphthalenol hydrochloride as a white powder.

mp: 188-189°C

IR (Nujol): 3340, 1610, 1600, 740, 700 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.40-1.90 (3H, m),

2.15-2.35 (1H, m), 2.55-2.70 (2H, m),

2.97 (2H, br s), 3.69 (3H, s), 4.19 (2H, br s),

5.93 (1H, br s), 6.75-6.80 (1H, m),

6.95-7.05 (2H, m), 7.35-7.55 (3H, m),

7.60-7.70 (2H, m), 8.94 (1H, br s),

9.57 (1H, br s)

MASS (m/z): 298 (M+1)<sup>+</sup>

# 25 Preparation 72

A suspension of 1-benzylaminomethyl-7-methoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-naphthalenol hydrochloride (45.00 g), ammonium formate (25.50 g), and 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet, 4.5 g) in methanol was refluxed for 40 minutes. After cooling, the catalyst was removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo. Water (45 ml), 1N hydrochloric acid (90 ml) and diethyl ether (120 ml) were added to the residue and the aqueous layer was separated. The aqueous layer was made alkaline with 5N aqueous sodium hydroxide (45 ml), and extracted with ethyl acetate (600

30

ml x 6 times). The organic layers were combined, dried over sodium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give 1-aminomethyl-7-methoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-1-naphthalenol (27.89 g) as a pale yellow powder.

5 mp:  $79-81^{\circ}C$ 

IR (Nujol) : 3360, 3300, 1610, 810, 730, 700 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ) : 1.60-2.20 (7H, m), 2.60-2.80 (2H, m), 2.80-3.00 (2H, m), 3.79 (3H, s), 6.75 (1H, dd, J=8.4Hz, 2.7Hz), 6.99 (1H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.06 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz)

MASS (m/z): 207  $(M^+)$ , 178, 121

#### Preparation 73

tetrahydro-1-naphthalenol (27.50 g) in 10% aqueous acetic acid solution (250 ml) was added dropwise a solution of sodium nitrite (10.07 g) in water (61 ml) at 8°C~9°C.

The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at the same temperature. The resulting precipitates were collected by filtration. The precipitates were dissolved in ethyl acetate. The solution was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography (silica gel, n-hexane:ethyl acetate: chloroform = 5:1:3) to give 3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-one (19.39 g) as a white powder.

The spectrum data of this compound coincided with that of the authentic sample.

#### Preparation 74

To a solution of 3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-one (220 g) in methanol (1300 ml) was added portionwise sodium borohydride (22.0 g) at 6°C-30°C, and then the reaction mixture was stirred for 40 minutes and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (1 l) and water (1 l). The organic

layer was washed with 1N hydrochloric acid (500 ml), aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (500 ml), and brine (200 ml), and dried over magnesium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo to give 3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-ol as a white powder.

mp : 57-59°C
IR (Film) : 3350, 1610, 760, 740, 700 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ) : 1.40-1.65 (2H, m), 1.70-1.95 (2H, m), 1.95-2.20 (1H, m), 2.65-2.75 (2H, m),
2.90-3.10 (2H, m), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.65-3.90 (1H, m), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=8.1Hz, 2.7Hz), 6.73 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz)
MASS (m/z) : 192 (M<sup>+</sup>), 135

# 15 Preparation 75

A mixture of (RS)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-ol (221 g), isopropenyl acetate (380 ml) and lipase PS (Amano) (221 g) in diisopropyl ether (4.8 l) was stirred at ambient temperature for 4 days.

- The reaction mixture was filtrated (celite) and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (silica gel, using dichloromethane and dichloromethane-methanol (20:1) successively as eluents). The first eluate gave (R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-
- benzocyclohepten-6-yl acetate (138.2 g) as a pale yellow oil and the second eluate (S)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-ol (104.4 g) as a colorless powder.
- (R)-3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-

 $[\alpha]_{D}^{21} = +16.01^{\circ} (c=1.18, CH_{2}Cl_{2})$   $IR (Film) : 1715, 1610, 810 cm^{-1}$   $NMR (CDCl_{3}, \delta) : 1.35-1.65 (1H, m), 1.65-2.00 (2H, m), 2.01 (3H, s), 2.00-2.20 (1H, m), 2.65-2.80$  (2H, m), 2.87 (1H, br d, J=13.6Hz), 3.10 (1H, m), 2.65-2.80

```
dd, J=13.6Hz, 9.8Hz), 3.77 (3H, s), 4.70-4.90
                 (1H, m), 6.60-6.75 (2H, m), 6.99 (1H, d,
                 J=7.9Hz)
            MASS (m/z): 234 (M^{+}), 174
 5
            (S)-3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-
      6-ol.
            [\alpha]_D^{21} = +16.11^{\circ} (c=0.72, CH_2Cl_2)
            IR (Nujol): 3350, 3270, 1610, 810, 700 cm<sup>-1</sup>
10
           NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.30-1.65 (2H, m), 1.65-1.95 (2H,
                 m), 1.95-2.15 (1H, m), 2.60-2.75 (2H, m),
                 2.90-3.10 (2H, m), 3.70-3.90 (1H, m), 3.78 (3H,
                 s), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=8.1Hz, 2.7Hz), 6.74 (1H, d,
15
                 J=2.7Hz), 7.00 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz)
           MASS (m/z): 192 (M^+), 135
      Preparation 76
           To a solution of (R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-
      benzocyclohepten-6-yl acetate (136 g) in methanol (1.36 %)
20
      was added dropwise a solution of sodium hydroxide (46.4 g)
      in water (232 ml) at ambient temperature.
                                                   The reaction
      mixture was stirred for 1 hour and evaporated in vacuo.
      The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (1.1 %)
      and brine (550 ml). The organic layer was washed with 1N
25
      hydrochloric acid solution (550 ml), 1N aqueous sodium
      hydroxide solution (550 ml), and brine (550 ml), dried
      over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give
```

mp : 76-78°C [ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>19</sup> = -15.16° (c=1.2,  $CH_2Cl_2$ )
IR (Nujol) : 3300, 1610, 810, 760, 700 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 1.40-1.65 (2H, m), 1.70-1.95 (2H, m), 1.95-2.20 (1H, m), 2.65-2.75 (2H, m),

(108.96 g) as a white powder.

(R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-ol

2.90-3.10 (2H, m), 3.78 (3H, s), 3.65-3.90 (1H, m), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=8.1Hz, 2.7Hz), 6.73 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz)

MASS (m/z): 192 (M<sup>+</sup>), 135

5

# Preparation 77

To a solution of (R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-ol (108.96 g) in pyridine (550 ml) was added portionwise p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (129.66 g) at 10°C~13°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient 10 temperature for 1 day. The solvent was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (1600 ml) and water (1080 ml). The organic layer was washed successively with 1N hydrochloric acid solution 15 (1080 ml), aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (1080 ml), and brine (500 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo to give a colorless powder. colorless powder was washed with n-hexane (twice) to give (R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl 20 4-methylbenzenesulfonate (182.23 g).

mp: 88-89°C  $[\alpha]_D^{20} = +26.40^\circ$  (c=2.5, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) IR (Nujol): 1610, 1590, 1350, 1180, 760 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.20-1.50 (1H, m), 1.75-2.25 (3H, m), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.55-2.70 (2H, m), 2.84 (1H, dt, J=13.8Hz, 1.7Hz), 3.08 (1H, dd, J=13.8Hz, 10.1Hz), 3.75 (3H, s), 4.40-4.55 (1H, m), 6.44 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.65 (1H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.7Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.30-7.40 (2H, m), 7.75-7.85 (2H, m) MASS (m/z): 346 (M<sup>+</sup>), 174

# Preparation 78

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 77.

```
(S)-3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-
        1)
             6-yl 4-methylbenzenesulfonate
                    92-95°C
             [\alpha]_D^{28} = -30.99^{\circ} (c=1.01, CH_2Cl_2)
             IR (Nujol): 1610, 1600, 1580, 1350, 1180, 760,
  5
                            720 \text{ cm}^{-1}
             NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.10-1.50 (1H, m), 1.75-2.20 (3H,
                  m), 2.46 (3H, m), 2.55-2.75 (2H, m), 2.75-2.95
                  (1H, m), 2.95-3.15 (1H, m), 3.75 (3H, s),
 10
                  4.35-4.55 (1H, m), 6.45 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz), 6.65
                  (1H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.6Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz),
                  7.34 (2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.79 (2H, d, J=8.1Hz)
            MASS (m/z): 346 (M^+), 174
15
       2)
            3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-
            yl 4-methylbenzenesulfonate
            mp: 76-78°C
            IR (Nujol): 1600, 1350, 1170, 820, 750 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.15-1.50 (1H, m), 1.75-2.20 (3H,
20
                 m), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.60-2.70 (2H, m), 2.80-2.90
                  (1H, m), 3.00-3.15 (1H, m), 3.76 (3H, s),
                 4.35-4.55 (1H, m), 6.45 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.65
                 (1H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.7Hz), 6.95 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz),
                 7.34 (2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.79 (2H, d, J=8.1Hz)
            MASS (m/z): 346 (M^+), 174
25
            3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-
      3)
            yl methanesulfonate
            mp: 96-97°C
30
            IR (Nujol): 1610, 1340, 1200, 770, 740, 720 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.35-1.70 (1H, m), 1.75-2.15 (2H,
                 m), 2.15-2.40 (1H, m), 2.70-2.75 (2H, m), 3.00
                 (3H, s), 3.10-3.30 (2H, m), 3.78 (3H, s),
                4.65-4.85 (1H, m), 6.65-6.80 (2H, m), 7.00 (1H,
35
                 d, J=8.1Hz)
```

MASS (m/z): 270  $(M^+)$ , 159

## Preparation 79

To a solution of (R)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-yl 4-methylbenzenesulfonate (181.0 g) 5 in dimethyl sulfoxide (2170 ml) was added portionwise sodium azide (67.93 g) at ambient temperature. mixture was stirred at 40°C for 2 days. The reaction mixture was poured into ethyl acetate (2.2 l) and ice water (2.2 l). The organic layer was separated, washed 10 successively with aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate (1.1  $\ell$ ), water (1.1  $\ell$ , three times), and brine (550 ml), dried over magnesium sulfate, treated with activated carbon, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue (117 g) was purified by column chromatography (silica gel 350 g, n-hexane:ethyl 15 acetate = 10:1) to give crude azido-form (IR (film), 2100  $cm^{-1}$  (-N<sub>3</sub>)). A mixture of this azido-form (111.2 g), ammonium formate (96.82 g), and 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet, 7.78 g) in methanol was refluxed for 1 hour. 20 After cooling, the catalyst was filtered off, and the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate (1 1) and 2N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (1.5 l). The organic layer was separated, washed with water (1 1) and brine (500 ml), dried over potassium carbonate, and evaporated in vacuo. 25 The residue was treated with 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate under ice bath cooling to give (S)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride (86.8 g) as a colorless powder.

30 mp:  $258-261^{\circ}C$  [ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>20</sup> =  $+30.59^{\circ}$  (c=1.50, MeOH)

IR (Nujol): 2610, 2500, 1610, 830, 760, 720 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.15-1.25 (1H, m), 1.65-2.05 (2H, m), 2.05-2.25 (1H, m), 2.60-2.75 (2H, m), 2.85-3.10 (3H, m), 3.72 (3H, s), 6.60-6.75 (2H,

25

```
m), 7.00-7.10 (1H, m), 8.15 (3H, br s) MASS (m/z): 191 (M<sup>+</sup>), 148
```

# Preparation 80

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 79.

1) (R)-3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride

10 mp:  $264-265^{\circ}$ C 
[ $\alpha$ ] $_{D}^{22}$  =  $-29.59^{\circ}$  (c=1.22, MeOH)

IR (Nujol): 2610, 2500, 1610, 830, 760, 720 cm $^{-1}$ NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.15-1.25 (1H, m), 1.65-2.05 (2H, m), 2.05-2.25 (1H, m), 2.60-2.75 (2H, m), 2.75-3.10 (3H, m), 3.72 (3H, s), 6.60-6.75 (2H, m), 7.00-7.10 (1H, m), 8.20 (3H, br s)

MASS (m/z): 191 (M<sup>+</sup>), 148

3-Methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6amine hydrochloride

mp : 230-233°C (dec.)

IR (Nujol): 2600, 2520, 1610, 760 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.15-1.45 (1H, m), 1.60-2.05 (2H, m), 2.05-2.30 (1H, m), 2.55-2.80 (2H, m),

2.80-3.15 (3H, m), 3.72 (3H, s), 6.60-6.85 (2H, m), 6.95-7.10 (1H, m), 8.19 (3H, br s)

MASS (m/z): 191  $(M^+)$ , 148

# Preparation 81

To a mixture of (S)-3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-ol (1.00 g), phthalimide (0.77 g), and triphenylphosphine (1.36 g) in dry tetrahydrofuran, was added dropwise a solution of diethyl azodicarboxylate (0.91 g) in dry tetrahydrofuran (3 ml) at 26°C~33°C. The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2 days.

The solvent was evaporated in vacuo. Diethyl ether (30 ml) was added to the residue and the mixture was stirred and the resulting precipitates (triphenyl phosphinoxide) were removed by filtration. The filtrate was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography (silica gel, n-hexane:ethyl acetate = 5:1) to give (R)-N-(3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclo-hepten-6-yl)phthalimide as a white powder (0.43 g).

mp : 132-133°C  $[\alpha]_D^{25} = -40.76^{\circ} \text{ (c=0.91, CH}_2\text{Cl}_2)$ IR (Nujol) : 1770, 1700, 1610, 800, 720 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 1.15-1.70 (1H, m), 1.90-2.20 (2H, m), 2.40-3.00 (4H, m), 3.77 (3H, s), 3.90-4.10 (1H, m), 4.10-4.30 (1H, m), 6.60-6.70 (2H, m), 7.00-7.10 (1H, m), 7.60-7.75 (2H, m), 7.80-7.90 (2H, m) 

MASS (m/z) : 321 (M<sup>+</sup>), 227, 174

## Preparation 82

20 A mixture of (R)-N-(3-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-yl)phthalimide (0.50 g) and hydrazine monohydrate (0.2 ml) in ethanol (8.0 ml) was refluxed for 1 hour. The resulting precipitates were removed by filtration and the filtrate was evaporated in vacuo. 25 residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and 1N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. The organic layer was washed with water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was treated with 4Nhydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate to give (R)-3-methoxy-30 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine hydrochloride (0.29 g).

mp: 264-265°C

# Preparation 83

A solution of 2-bromoacetylnaphthalene (7.00 g) and tetra-n-butyl ammonium bromide (0.905 g) in

10

25

30

1,2-dichloroethane (226 ml) was refluxed for 3.5 hours, evaporated in vacuo and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was washed with n-hexane to afford 2-chloroacetylnaphthalene (5.43 g) as a yellow powder.

IR (Nujol):  $1680 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 4.81 (2H, s), 7.5-7.6 (2H, m), 7.8-8.0 (4H, m), 8.43 (1H, s) MASS (m/z): 206 and 204 (M<sup>+</sup>), 155, 127

# Preparation 84

A mixture of 2-acetonaphthone (3.40 g) and selenium dioxide (4.88 g) in dioxane (200 ml) and water (1 ml) was stirred under reflux for 6 hours and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo and extracted with diethyl ether. The extract was washed twice with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to give a pale brown powder of 2,2"-oxybis[2-hydroxy-2'-20 acetonaphthone] (3.21 g).

mp : 112-122°C

IR (Nujol) : 3320, 1690 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ) : 5.06 (2H, br s), 6.58 (2H, s),

7.2-8.3 (12H, m), 8.75 (2H, s)

MASS (m/z) : 184, 155, 127

#### Preparation 85

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Preparation 84.

1) 2,2"-Oxybis[2-hydroxy-1'-acetonaphthone]
 mp: 89-91°C
 IR (Nujol): 3410, 3270, 1665 cm<sup>-1</sup>
 NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 5.16 (2H, br s), 6.50 (2H, s),
 7.4-7.7 (6H, m), 7.85 (2H, d, J=8.6Hz), 8.06

```
(2H, d, J=8.2Hz), 8.40 (2H, dd, J=1.1Hz, 7.4Hz), 8.99 (2H, dd, J=0.8Hz, 8.4Hz)

MASS (m/z): 184, 155
```

- 5 2) 2,2"-Oxybis[2-hydroxy-1-(5'-indanyl)ethanone]
  mp: 111-122°C
  IR (Nujol): 3380, 1670, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>
  NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 2.06 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.14 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.94 (8H, t, J=7.4Hz), 5.06 (2H, d, J=10.0Hz), 6.33 (2H, d, J=10.0Hz), 7.29 (2H, d, J=11.9Hz), 7.92 (2H, d, J=11.9Hz), 7.95 (2H, s)
- 3) 2,2"-Oxybis[1-(5'-benzofurazanyl)-2-hydroxyethanone]
   NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 4.46 (2H, d, J=10Hz), 5.72 (2H, d, J=10Hz), 7.9-8.2 (4H, m), 8.6-8.7 (2H, m)

## Preparation 86

To an ice-cooled suspension of potassium tert-butoxide (0.82 g) in tetrahydrofuran (6.6 ml) was added trimethylsulfonium iodide (98% purity; 1.5 g) in 20 dimethyl sulfoxide (6.6 ml). After the addition was complete, piperonal (1.0 g) in tetrahydrofuran (3.3 ml) was added dropwise to the mixture while the internal temperature was maintained below 5°C. After stirring at 25 ambient temperature for 1 hour, the mixture was poured into water and extracted once with ethyl acetate. extract was washed twice with water and once with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo to give 3,4-methylenedioxyphenyoxirane (1.0 g), which was used for next reaction without further 30 purification.

> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 2.74 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 5Hz), 3.09 (1H, dd, J=4Hz, 5Hz), 3.78 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 4Hz), 5.94 (2H, s), 6.6-6.9 (3H, m) MASS (m/z): 164

BNSDOCID: <WO 9315041A1 1 >

10

# Preparation 87

To an ice-cooled mixture of L-tyrosine benzyl ester p-toluenesulfonate (41.0 g), pyridine (16.4 ml), and dichloromethane (92 ml) was added methyl chloroformate (7.8 ml). The mixture was stirred in an ice-bath for 1 hour, diluted with water, and extracted once with dichloromethane. The extract was concentrated in vacuo and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the crude product by column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution; 10:1 to 5:1 chloroform-ethyl acetate) gave N-methoxycarbonyl-L-tyrosine benzyl ester (22.0 g).

mp : 100-101°C

15 IR (Nujol): 3360, 1720, 1700 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 3.01 (2H, d, J=6Hz), 3.65 (3H, s), 4.5-4.8 (1H m), 4.8-4.6 (4H = 7), 6.6.5 (3H, s),

4.5-4.8 (1H, m), 4.8-4.6 (4H, m), 6.6-6.8 (2H,

m), 6.8-7.0 (2H, m), 7.2-7.6 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 329

20

25

30

### Preparation 88

A mixture of N-methoxycarbonyl-L-tyrosine benzyl ester (22.0 g), methyl iodide (10.8 ml), potassium carbonate (24.0 g), and N,N-dimethylformamide (87 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature for 5 hours. The mixture was diluted with dichloromethane (87 ml) and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The crude product was purified by pulverization with petroleum ether to give N-methoxycarbonyl-O-methyl-L-tyrosine benzyl ester (16.0 g).

mp: 83-84°C

IR (Nujol): 3430, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>

35 NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 3.03 (2H, d, J=6Hz), 3.66 (3H, s),

- 97 -

```
3.76 (3H, s), 4.5-4.8 (1H, m), 5.0-5.3 (3H, m), 6.7-6.8 (2H, m), 6.8-7.0 (2H, m), 7.2-7.5 (5H, m)

MASS (m/z): 268 (M-H_2NCO_2Me)^+
```

5

10

15

# Preparation 89

A mixture of N-methoxycarbonyl-O-methyl-L-tyrosine benzyl ester (14.5 g), 10% palladium on carbon (0.73 g), and tetrahydrofuran (145 ml)-water (14.5 ml) was shaken under hydrogen at ambient temperature for 2 hours. An additional 10% palladium on carbon (0.73 g) was added to the mixture and shaking was continued for an additional 2 hours. The catalyst was filtered off and washed with tetrahydrofuran. The filtrate and washings were combined and concentrated in vacuo to afford N-methoxycarbonyl-O-methyl-L-tyrosine (10.5 g).

mp: 85-86°C

IR (Nujol): 3260, 3140, 1730, 1660 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 2.9-3.2 (2H, m), 3.67 (3H, s), 3.79

(3H, s), 4.5-4.8 (1H, m), 5.0-5.2 (1H, m),

6.7-6.9 (2H, m), 7.0-7.2 (2H, m)

MASS (m/z): 221 (M-CH<sub>3</sub>OH)<sup>+</sup>

# Preparation 90

L-tyrosine (0.5 g) in dichloromethane (2 ml) was added thionyl chloride (0.29 ml). After stirring for 1 hour at ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (5 ml) and treated with 0.9 M ethylaluminum dichloride in dichloromethane (4.4 ml) in an ice-bath. The mixture was allowed to warm to ambient temperature and stirred overnight. The mixture was poured into concentrated hydrochloric acid containing crashed ice and extracted once with dichloromethane. The extract was washed with

10

20

25

water and brine, dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the residue by column chromatography on silica gel (eluent; 10:1 dichloromethane-ethyl acetate) gave 6-methoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)indan-1-one (0.12 g).

mp: 174-177°C

IR (Nujol) : 3330, 1720, 1680 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 2.87 (1H, dd, J=5Hz, 16Hz), 3.38 (1H, dd, J=8Hz, 16Hz), 3.54 (3H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.26 (1H, ddd, J=5Hz, 8Hz, 8Hz), 7.11 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.28 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 7.45 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

MASS (m/z): 235

## 15 <u>Preparation 91</u>

A mixture of 6-methoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)indan1-one (0.30 g), boron trifluoride etherate (0.90 ml), and
ethanedithiol (0.90 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature
for 2 hours. The mixture was poured into saturated
aqueous sodium bicarbonate and extracted twice with ethyl
acetate. The combined extracts were washed with brine,
dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in
vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography
on silica gel (gradient elution; 5:1 to 2:1 n-hexane-ethyl
acetate) to give 6-methoxy-2(methoxycarbonylamino)indan 1 concentrated (methoxycarbonylamino)indan 1

(methoxycarbonylamino)indan-1-one ethylene dithioacetal (0.48 g) as an oil.

IR (Film):  $3330.1700 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ 

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 2.63 (1H, dd, J=8Hz, 15Hz), 3.0-3.6 (5H, m), 3.72 (3H, s), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.5-4.8 (1H, m), 5.3-5.6 (1H, m), 6.78 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.9-7.1 (2H, m)

MASS (m/z): 311

## Preparation 92

A mixture of 6-methoxy-2-(methoxycarbonylamino)indan-1-one ethylene dithioacetal (0.12 g), Raney nickel (suspension in water; 5 ml), and ethanol (12 ml) was refluxed for 0.5 hour. The mixture was filtered and the catalyst was washed with hot ethanol. The filtrate and washings were combined and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the residue by column chromatography on silica gel (eluent; chloroform) gave 5-methoxy-Nmethoxycarbonylindan-2-amine (0.08 g).

10

mp : 120-121°C IR (Nujol) : 3290, 1670 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 2.5-2.9 (2H, m), 2.9-3.2 (2H, m), 3.52 (3H, s), 3.69 (3H, s), 4.1-4.3 (1H, m), 15 6.68 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.77 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.07 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.5 (1H, m) MASS (m/z): 221

## Preparation 93

20 A mixture of 5-methoxy-N-methoxycarbonylindan-2-amine (0.25 g) and 47% hydrobromic acid (20 ml) was refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, the mixture was concentrated in Toluene was added to the residue and the whole was concentrated in vacuo to dryness to give 5-hydroxyindan-2amine hydrobromide (0.26 g). 25

mp : >235°C (dec.) IR (Nujol):  $3370 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 2.7-3.0 (2H, m), 3.0-3.3 (2H, m), 3.8-4.1 (1H, m), 6.5-6.8 (2H, m), 7.04 (1H, d, 30 J=8Hz), 8.03 (3H, br s), 9.24 (1H, br s) MASS (m/z): 149

### Preparation 94

A mixture of 5-hydroxyindan-2-amine hydrobromide 35 (0.66 g), triethylamine (0.95 ml), di-tert-butyl

20

25

30

dicarbonate (0.75 g), and N,N-dimethylformamide (6.6 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature for 4 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and the precipitates were filtered off. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to afford the crude product which was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (eluent; 5:1 n-hexane-ethyl acetate) to give N-tert-butoxycarbonyl-5-hydroxyindan-2-amine (0.44 g).

IR (Film): 3330, 1670 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.45 (9H, s), 2.6-2.8 (2H, m),
3.1-3.4 (2H, m), 4.3-4.6 (1H, br m), 4.6-4.9
(1H, br m), 5.32 (1H, br s), 6.64 (1H, dd,
J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.70 (1H, br s), 7.04 (1H, d,
J=8Hz)

MASS (m/z): 249

#### Preparation 95

A mixture of N-tert-butoxycarbonyl-5-hydroxyindan-2amine (0.42 g), potassium carbonate (0.34 g), ethyl bromoacetate (0.24 ml), and N,N-dimethylformamide (4.2 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature for 20 hours. An additional portion of ethyl bromoacetate (0.12 ml) and potassium carbonate (0.17 g) was added to the mixture, and stirring was continued for an additional 12 hours. mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and the precipitates were filtered off. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo, and the residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the residue by column chromatography on silica gel (eluent; 5:1 n-hexane-ethyl acetate) to give N-tert-butoxycarbonyl-5-ethoxycarbonylmethoxyindan-2amine (0.44 g).

mp : 73-75°C

35 IR (Nujol): 3400, 1750, 1700 cm<sup>-1</sup>

```
NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 6): 1.30 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.44 (9H, s), 2.6-2.9 (2H, m), 3.1-3.4 (2H, m), 4.27 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.3-4.5 (1H, br m), 4.58 (2H, s), 4.6-4.9 (1H, br m), 6.72 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.76 (1H, br s), 7.10 (1H, d, J=8Hz)

MASS (m/z): 335
```

# Preparation 96

A mixture of N-tert-butoxycarbonyl-5-ethoxycarbonylmethoxyindan-2-amine (0.39 g) and 4N hydrogen chloride in
1,4-dioxane (11.6 ml) was allowed to stand at ambient
temperature for 2 hours. The mixture was concentrated in
vacuo to afford the solid, which was washed with
diisopropyl ether and dried in vacuo to give

5-(ethoxycarbonylmethoxy)indan-2-amine hydrochloride (0.247 g).

mp : 155-160°C

IR (Nujol) : 2600, 1750 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.21 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 2.8-3.0 (2H, m), 3.0-3.4 (2H, m), 3.9-4.1 (1H, m), 4.15 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.75 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.85 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 8.23 (3H, br s)

MASS (m/z): 235

25

20

### Example 1

- 1) A mixture of 6-amino-3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocycloheptene (1.0 g),
- (R)-3-chlorostyrene oxide (0.58 g), and n-propanol (7.6 ml) was refluxed for 3 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo. A crude column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution; 3:1 n-hexane-ethyl acetate to ethyl acetate to ethyl acetate-ethanol; 25:1 to 10:1) afforded about 0.8 g of crude
- product. Another flash column chromatography on silica

10

15

20

25

gel (gradient elution; 1:3 n-hexane-ethyl acetate to 25:1 ethyl acetate-ethanol) was performed to give a mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.60 g).

The obtained mixture (0.60 g) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (2.5 ml) and, with cooling, treated with 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (3.5 ml). After stirring for 5 minutes, the mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethanol (5 ml) and precipitated by the addition of n-hexane (40 ml). The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the resulting solid was collected, washed with n-hexane, and dried to give a mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonyl-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)-amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride (0.54 g).

mp: 114-119°C

IR (Nujol): 3400, 3170, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.19 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.20 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.1-1.5 (2H, m), 1.7-2.1 (4H, m), 2.2-2.5 (2H, m), 2.5-2.9 (4H, m), 2.9-3.4 (12H, m), 4.14 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.16 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.70 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 4.9-5.1 (2H, m), 6.3-6.4 (2H, m), 6.6-6.8 (2H, m), 6.8-6.9 (2H, m), 7.0-7.1 (2H, m), 7.3-7.6 (8H, m), 8.8-9.6 (2H, m)

### 30 Example 2

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 1.

FAB-MASS (m/z): 420  $(M^{+}+3-HC1)$ , 418  $(M^{+}+1-HC1)$ 

1) (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(2-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-

```
(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
             IR (Film) : 3300, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.29 (6H, t, J=7Hz), 1.3-2.3 (8H,
                  m), 2.3-2.6 (2H, m), 2.6-2.9 (4H, m), 2.9-3.5
  5
                   (10H, m), 4.26 (4H, q, J=7Hz), 4.56 (4H, s),
                  5.2-5.8 (2H, m), 6.4-6.8 (4H, m), 6.9-7.6 (10H,
                  m), 8.2-8.8 (2H, m), 9.6-10.4 (2H, m)
             FAB-MASS (m/z): 420 (M^++3-HC1), 418 (M^++1-HC1)
 10
             (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-
       2)
             5,6,7,8,9,10-hexahydrobenzocycloocten-6-yl)amino]-
             1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
                   62-66°C
             IR (Nujol): 3275, 1750, 1605, 1575, 1500, 1200 cm<sup>-1</sup>
15
            NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.80-1.0 (2H, m), 1.20 (6H, t,
                  J=7.1Hz), 1.30-1.90 (10H, m), 2.57-2.89 (4H, m),
                  3.0-3.45 (10H, m), 4.16 (4H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.72
                  (4H, m), 4.95-5.13 (2H, m), 6.3-6.4 (2H, m),
                  6.7-6.8 (2H, m), 6.8-6.9 (2H, m), 7.0-7.1 (2H,
                 m), 7.35-7.6 (8H, m), 8.5-9.4 (4H, m)
20
            FAB-MASS (m/z): 434 (M^{+}+3-HC1), 432 (M^{+}+1-HC1)
            (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-
       3)
            tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-
25
            (3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
            mp:
                   91-98°C
            [\alpha]_D^{28} = +12.45^{\circ} \text{ (c=0.53, EtOH)}
            IR (Nujol): 3360, 1750, 1595 \text{ cm}^{-1}
            NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, \delta): 1.19 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.2-1.4 (1H,
30
                 m), 1.7-2.1 (2H, m), 2.2-2.4 (1H, m), 2.6-2.8
                 (2H, m), 2.9-3.3 (5H, m), 4.15 (2H, d, J=7Hz),
                 4.70 (2H, s), 4.9-5.1 (1H, m), 6.33 (1H, d,
                 J=4Hz), 6.66 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.87 (1H, d,
                 J=2Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.3-7.6 (4H, m),
35
                 8.6-9.3 (2H, m)
```

```
FAB-MASS (m/z): 420 (M^{+}+3-HC1), 418 (M^{+}+1-HC1)
            Analysis Calcd. for C23H28ClNO4.HCl.+H20
                                 C 58.47, H 6.61, N 2.96
                       Found: C 58.63, H 6.79, N 2.98
 5
       4)
            (1R,6'R)-2-[(3-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-
            tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-
            chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
            IR (Nujol): 3500-2000, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (DMSO-d<sub>c</sub>, \delta): 1.20 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.1-1.4 (1H,
10
                 m), 1.6-2.1 (2H, m), 2.2-2.4 (1H, m), 2.6-2.8
                 (2H, m), 2.9-3.4 (5H, m), 4.16 (2H, q, J=7Hz).
                 4.71 (2H, s), 4.9-5.1 (1H, m), 6.34 (1H, d.
                 J=3Hz), 6.67 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.81 (1H, d,
15
                 J=2Hz), 7.04 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.4-7.6 (4H, m).
                 8.6-8.9 (1H, m), 9.1-9.4 (1H, m)
           FAB-MASS (m/z): 420 (M^{+}+3-HC1), 418 (M^{+}+1-HC1)
      .5)
           (1R,2'R)- and (1S,2'S)-2-[(7-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-
20
            1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]-1-(3,4-
           methylenedioxyphenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
           mp: 175-180°C
           IR (Nujol): 3320, 2500, 2400, 1750 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.20 (6H, t, J=7Hz), 1.6-2.0 (2H,
25
                m), 2.2-2.5 (2H, m), 2.6-3.6 (14H, m), 4.15 (4H,
                 q, J=7Hz), 4.71 (4H, s), 4.9-5.1 (2H, m), 6.02
                 (4H, s), 6.1-6.2 (2H, m), 6.6-6.8 (4H, m),
                 6.8-7.1 (8H, m), 8.7-9.1 (2H, br m), 9.2-9.6
                 (2H, br m)
30
           MASS (m/z): 414 (M+1)^+
      6)
           (1R,2'S)- and (1S,2'S)-2-[(7-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-
           1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]-1-(5-
           benzofurazanyl)ethanol hydrochloride
35
           mp: 205-220°C
```

```
IR (Nujol) : 3300, 1750 \text{ cm}^{-1}
              NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.20 (6H, t, J=7Hz), 1.6-2.0 (2H,
                   m), 2.2-2.5 (2H, m), 2.6-3.7 (14H, m), 4.15 (4H,
                   q, J=7Hz), 4.72 (2H, s), 5.25 (2H, m), 6.5-6.9
   5
                   (6H, m), 7.02 (2H, d, J=8Hz), 7.71 (2H, d,
                   J=9Hz), 8.05 (2H, s), 8.12 (2H, d, J=9Hz),
                   8.9-9.3 (2H, br m), 9.4-9.8 (2H, br m)
             MASS (m/z) : 412 (M+1)^+
 10
        7)
             (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-Benzyl-[3-(2-ethoxy-
             carbonylpropan-2-yloxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-
             benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-
             ethanol hydrochloride
             mp: 95-106°C
 15
             IR (Nujol) : 3170, 1720, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, \delta): 1.0-1.3 (8H, m), 1.4-1.6 (12H,
                  m), 1.8-2.2 (4H, m), 2.4-2.8 (6H, m), 2.9-3.7
                  (10H, m), 4.05-4.3 (4H, m), 4.6-5.6 (6H, m),
                  6.3-8.0 (26H, m), 10.2-11.2 (2H, m)
 20
            MASS (m/z) : 536 (M^{+}+1-HC1)
            (-)-(2'S)-1-(6-Chloro-2-pyridyl)-2-[(7-ethoxy-
       8)
            carbonylmethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)-
            amino]ethanol
25
            mp:
                  107-109°C
            [\alpha]_D^{28.4} = -93.4^{\circ} (c=0.20, ethanol)
            IR (Nujol): 3260, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.30 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.46-1.73
                 (1H, m), 1.96-2.15 (1H, m), 2.44-3.30 (7H, m),
30
                 1.70-3.10 (2H, br m), 4.27 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz),
                 4.66-4.81 (1H, m), 6.59 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.69
                 (1H, dd, J=2.7Hz, 8.4Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8.4Hz),
                 7.23 (1H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J=7.6Hz),
                 7.67 (1H, pseudo t, J=7.7Hz)
35
```

9) (1R,2'R)- and (1R,2'S)-1-(3-Chlorophenyl)-2-(N-methylthioethyl-7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)aminoethanol

IR (Neat): 3400, 1510, 1340 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.46-1.95 (2H, m), 1.99-2.24 (2H, m), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.40-3.24 (22H, m), 4.26 (2H, br s), 4.57-4.75 (2H, m), 7.26 (10H, s), 7.40 (2H, s), 7.90-8.09 (4H, m)

10 (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-Benzyl-(3-ethoxycarbonylmethylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-ethanol dihydrochloride

mp : 132-134°C

15 IR (Nujol): 3225, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>

#### Example 3

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 1-1).

20

1) (1R,2'R)- and (1R,2'S)-2-[(5-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-2-indanyl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol

mp : 104-105°C

IR (Nujol):  $1760 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ 

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.29 (6H, t, J=7Hz), 2.6-3.3 (12H, m), 3.6-3.8 (2H, m), 4.26 (4H, q, J=7Hz), 4.58 (4H, s), 4.65 (2H, dd, J=3Hz, 8Hz)), 6.6-6.8 (4H, m), 7.09 (2H, d, J=8Hz), 7.1-7.5 (8H, m) FAB-MASS (m/z): 392 (M<sup>+</sup>+3), 390 (M<sup>+</sup>+1)

30

2) (1R,6'R)-2-[(3-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol

mp : 98-100°C  $[\alpha]_D^{29} = -38.3$ ° (c=0.62, EtOH)

```
IR (CH_2Cl_2 \text{ solution}) : 3450-3400, 1750 cm<sup>-1</sup>
              NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.18 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.2-2.1 (4H,
                   m), 2.5-2.9 (7H, m), 4.14 (2H, q, J=7Hz),
                   4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 4.68 (2H, s), 5.3-5.6 (1H, m),
   5
                   6.58 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.73 (1H, d, J=2Hz),
                   6.96 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.5 (4H, m)
              MASS (m/z): 420 (M+3), 418 (M+1)
             Analysis Calcd. for C_{23}H_{28}Clno_4
                                   C 66.10, H 6.75, N 3.35
  10
                         Found: C 66.21, H 6.94, N 3.36
        3)
             (1R,6'R) - or (1R,6'S) - or (1S,6'R) - or (1S,6'S) -1-(2-
             Naphthyl)-2-[N-benzyl-(3-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-
             5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]ethanol (isomer A)
 15
             NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.2-1.3 (1H, br), 2.0 (3H, br),
                   2.6-2.8 (7H, m), 3.67 (1H, d, J=13.6Hz), 3.97
                  (1H, d, J=13.6Hz), 4.70 (1H, dd, J=3.9Hz,
                  9.9Hz), 6.51 (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz, 8.0Hz), 6.62 (1H,
                  d, J=2.6Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.1-7.5 (8H,
. 20
                  m), 7.8 (4H, m)
             MASS (m/z): 438 (M^{+}+1)
             (1R,6'R) - or (1R,6'S) - or (1S,6'R) - or (1S,6'S) -1-(2-
        4)
             Naphthyl)-2-[N-benzyl-(3-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-
 25
             5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]ethanol (isomer B)
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.2-1.3 (1H, br), 1.4-1.7 (1H, m),
                  1.9-2.0 (1H, m), 2.2-2.3 (1H, m), 2.6-3.1 (7H,
                  m), 3.60 (1H, d, J=13.6Hz), 3.84 (1H, d,
                  J=13.6Hz), 4.59 (1H, dd, J=3.6Hz, 10.1Hz), 6.51
 30
                  (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz, 9.0Hz), 6.59 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz),
                  6.87 (1H, d, J=9.0Hz), 7.1-7.5 (8H, m), 7.7-7.8
                  (4H, m)
            (1R,2'S) - or (1S,2'S) -1-(2-Naphthyl) -2-[(7-ethoxy-
       5)
35
            carbonylmethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]-
```

ethanol

10

15

20

25

30

```
mp : 113-114^{\circ}C
[\alpha]<sub>D</sub> = -74.16^{\circ} (c=0.48, MeOH)
IR (Nujol) : 3430, 1725 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta) : 1.29 (3H, t, J=7.2Hz), 1.5-1.7 (1H, m), 2.0 (1H, m), 2.2-3.2 (9H, m), 4.22 (2H, q, J=7.2Hz), 4.56 (2H, s), 4.89 (1H, dd, J=3.6Hz, 8.8Hz), 6.59 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.68 (1H, dd, J=2.5Hz, 8.3Hz), 6.99 (1H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.4-7.5 (3H, m), 7.8-7.9 (4H, m)

MASS (m/z) : 420 (M<sup>+</sup>+1), 401 and 388
```

### Example 4

A mixture of 2-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (0.69 g), (R)-3-chlorostyrene oxide (0.44 g), and n-propanol (5.2 ml) was refluxed for 1.5 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (100:1 ethyl acetate-ethanol) to give a mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(2-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.46 g).

The obtained mixture (0.33 g) was dissolved in ethanol (3.3 ml) and treated with oxalic acid (71 mg) in ethanol (3.3 ml). After 5 minutes, the mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate (3.3 ml) and precipitated by the addition of diisopropyl ether (3.3 ml). The solvent was removed in vacuo and the precipitate was dried to give a mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(2-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol oxalate (0.40 g).

mp : 65-87°C IR (Nujol) : 3500-2200, 1750-1730 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ) : 1.1-1.5 (2H, m), 1.20 (6H, t,

```
J=7Hz), 1.6-2.4 (6H, m), 2.5-2.8 (4H, m),

2.9-3.4 (10H, m), 4.15 (4H, q, J=7Hz), 4.71 (4H

s), 4.8-5.1 (2H, m), 5.1-6.5 (4H, m), 6.5-6.8

(4H, m), 7.0-7.2 (2H, m), 7.3-7.6 (8H, m)

FAB-MASS (m/z): 420 (M^++3-C_2H_2O_4),

418 (M^++1-C_2H_2O_4)
```

# Example 5

To a suspension of (1R,6'R)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonyl-10 methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.30 g) in 50% aqueous ethanol (7.0 ml) was added sodium hydroxide (0.09 g). After stirring at ambient temperature for 0.5 hour, the reaction mixture was treated with 3M hydrochloric acid (0.8 ml) to 15 afford the precipitate, which was collected and washed with cold water. The precipitate was suspended in ethanol (20 ml), and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. Filtration followed by drying in vacuo to give (R)-[8-[(R)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-20 hydroxyethylamino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yloxy]acetic acid(0.22 g).

mp : 265-266°C [ $\alpha$ ]  $\alpha$  = -22.4° (c=0.56, 1N NaOH)

IR (Nujol) : 3500-2200, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub> + NaOD,  $\alpha$ ) : 1.0-2.1 (4H, m), 2.3-3.0 (7H, m), 3.9-4.2 (2H, m), 4.5-4.8 (1H, m), 6.4-7.0 (3H, m), 7.1-7.5 (4H, m)

MASS (m/z) : 392 (M+3), 390 (M+1)

# 30 Example 6

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 5.

1) (S)-[8-[(R)-2-(3-Chlorophenyl)-2-hydroxyethylamino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yloxy]acetic acid

```
mp: 247-249°C (dec.)
             [\alpha]_D^{22.8} = +26.2^{\circ} (c=0.205, 1N NaOH)
             IR (Nujol): 2700, 2350, 1600, 1580, 1540 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (DMSO-d_6 + NaOD, \delta): 1.19-2.04 (5H, m),
 5
                   2.42-2.86 (6H, m), 4.02 (2H, s), 4.47-4.66 (1H,
                  m), 6.47 (1H, dd, J=8.1Hz, 2.5Hz), 6.61 (1H, d,
                   J=2.5Hz), 6.88 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.17-7.55 (4H,
             Analysis Calcd. for C_{21}H_{24}ClnO_4
10
                                   C 64.69, H 6.20, N 3.59
                         Found: C 64.47, H 6.29, N 3.59
        2)
             2-\{(RS)-8-[(R)-2-(3-Chlorophenyl)-2-hydroxyethyl-
             amino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-
15
             yloxy}-2-methylpropionic acid
             mp : 134-141°C (dec.)
             IR (Nujol): 1565, 1145 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.0-1.3 (2H, m), 1.47 (6H, s),
                  1.50 (6H, s), 1.4-3.1 (20H, m), 4.8-4.95 (2H,
20
                  m), 6.55 (2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 6.68 (2H, s), 6.89
                  (2H, d, J=8.0Hz), 7.3-7.5 (8H, m)
       3)
             3-{(RS)-8-[(R)-2-(3-Chlorophenyl)-2-hydroxyethyl-}
             amino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-
25
             yl}propionic acid
             mp : 221-224°C
            IR (Nujol): 3210, 2650, 2325 \text{ cm}^{-1}
            NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.18-2.10 (8H, m), 2.39-3.00
                  (22H, m), 4.58-4.75 (2H, m), 5.51 (2H, br s),
30
                  6.86-7.08 (6H, m), 7.23-7.48 (8H, m)
```

```
4) (E)-3-{(RS)-8-[(R)-2-(3-Chlorophenyl)-2-hydroxyethyl-amino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yl}-acrylic acid
mp: 222-228°C
IR (Nujol): 3500, 2670, 2340 cm<sup>-1</sup>
NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.20-2.23 (8H, m), 2.58-3.25 (14H, m), 4.74-5.00 (2H, m), 5.55 (2H, br s), 6.48 (2H, d, J=15.9Hz), 7.13 (2H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.25-7.64 (14H, m)
```

## Example 7

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 4.

15 1) (1R,7'R) - and (1R,7'S)-1-(3-Chlorophenyl)-2-[(2ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-7-yl)amino]ethanol oxalate 90-93°C (dec.) IR (Nujol): 3300, 2750-2300, 1745, 1600, 1195 cm<sup>-1</sup> 20 NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.21 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.15-1.45 (4H, m), 2.2-2.35 (4H, m), 2.65-2.85 (8H, m), 2.95-3.35 (6H, m), 4.16 (4H, quartet, J=7.1Hz), 4.71 (4H, s), 4.90 (2H, br d, J=7.4Hz), 5.55(8H, br), 6.63 (2H, dd, J=8.2Hz, 2.6Hz), 6.74 25 (2H, d, J=2.6Hz), 7.04 (2H, J=8.2Hz), 7.39 (6H,m), 7.48 (2H, m) FAB-MASS (m/z): 420 and 418  $(M^{+}(free)+1)$ 

30

```
(1R, 2'R) - and (1R, 2'S) -1-(3-Chlorophenyl) -2-(N-
      2)
           methylthioethyl-7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-
           naphthyl)aminoethanol oxalate
           mp: 90-109°C
           IR (Nujol) : 3250 \text{ cm}^{-1}
 5
           NMR (DMSO-d_6 + D_2O, \delta): 1.66-2.05 (2H, m),
                 2.10-2.35 (2H, m), 2.13 (6H, s), 2.72-3.50 (22H,
                 m), 4.88-5.07 (2H, m), 7.27-7.61 (10H, m),
                 7.90-8.13 (4H, m)
10
          (1R, 2'S) - and (1S, 2'S) -1-(6-Chloro-2-pyridyl)-2-[(7-
           ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)-
           amino]ethanol oxalate
           mp : 111-125°C (dec.)
15
           IR (Nujol) : 3250 (broad), 2800-2300 (broad),
                           1750, 1640, 790, 700 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub> + D<sub>2</sub>O, \delta) : 1.20 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.21
                 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.05-2.40 (4H, m), 2.95-3.35
                 (12H, m), 4.15 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.16 (2H, q,
20
                 J=7.1Hz), 4.30-4.45 (2H, m), 4.70 (2H, s), 4.71
                 (2H, s), 4.85-5.05 (2H, m), 6.65-6.95 (6H, m),
                 7.35-7.55 (8H, m)
           MASS (m/z): 418 (M-1), 388, 278, 249
25
           [(1R,6'R) \text{ and } (1R,6'S)] - \text{ or } [(1S,6'R) \text{ and } (1S,6'S)] -
      4)
           1-(6-Chloro-2-pyridyl-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-
           6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-
           ethanol oxalate
           mp: 60-66°C
           IR (Nujol): 3150, 2660, 2350, 1730, 1580 cm<sup>-1</sup>
30
           NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.1-1.2 (6H, m), 1.95 (4H, m), 2.24
                 (2H, m), 2.5 (4H, m), 2.63 (4H, m), 3.0-3.5
                 (10H, m), 4.0-4.2 (4H, m), 4.70 (2H, s), 4.71
               (2H, s), 4.9 (2H, m), 6.67 (2H, dd, J=8.1Hz,
35
                 2.6Hz), 6.79 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz), 6.85 (1H, d,
```

```
J=2.6Hz), 7.04 (2H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.48 (2H, d, J=7.9Hz), 7.5-7.6 (2H, m), 7.9-8.0 (2H, m) MASS (m/z) : 421 and 419 (M<sup>+</sup>(free)+1)
```

# 5 <u>Example</u> 8

A mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-benzyl-(3hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.20 g), potassium carbonate (98 mg), and N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml) was stirred at 60°C for 1 hour. The mixture was allowed to 10 cool to ambient temperature and then cooled in an ice-bath. To the mixture was added n-tetrabutylammonium bromide (7.6 mg) and diethyl bromomalonate (95% purity; 0.12 ml) and stirring was continued for 1.5 hours in an 15 ice-bath. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and the precipitate was filtered off and washed with ethyl acetate. The filtrate and washings were combined, washed twice with water and once with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in 20 vacuo. The residue was subjected to column chromatography on silica gel (230-400 mesh; 7:1 n-hexane-ethyl acetate) to give a diastereomeric mixtures of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-[N-benzyl-(3-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methoxy-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-25 chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.12 g).

IR (Film): 3400, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.1-1.4 (14H, m), 1.4-2.4 (10H, m), 2.4-3.2 (10H, m), 3.6-4.1 (4H, m), 4.2-4.5 (9H, m), 4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 6.8-7.1 (6H, m), 7.1-7.5 (18H, m)

MASS (m/z): 582  $(M+2+H)^+$ , 580  $(M+H)^+$ 

## Example 9

To a solution of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-benzyl-35 (3-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)-

15

20

amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.42 g) in N,N-dimethylformamide (5 ml) was added potassium carbonate (0.15 g). After the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 0.5 hour, bromoacetone (0.1 ml) was added, and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 18 5 The mixture was poured into water and extracted once with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with chloroform-methanol (100:1). The obtained free amine was converted to its hydrochloride in a usual manner. resulting solid was triturated with diisopropyl ether to give a mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-benzyl-[3-(2-oxopropoxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride. mp: 66-75°C IR (Nujol): 3200, 2600, 1725 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ ,  $\delta$ ): 0.9-1.3 (2H, m), 1.8-2.25 (10H, m), 2.5-2.9 (6H, m), 2.9-3.65 (10H, m), 4.4-5.55 (10H, m), 6.3-7.95 (26H, m), 9.9-10.3 (2H, m) MASS (m/z): 478  $(M^{+}+1-HC1)$ 

## Example 10

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 9.

1) (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-Benzyl-[3-(2-oxobutoxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
mp: 81-88°C

IR (Nujol): 3200, 2570, 1715, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 0.8-1.4 (8H, m), 1.65-2.25 (4H, m), 2.25-2.8 (10H, m), 2.9-3.7 (10H, m), 4.4-5.6
(10H, m), 6.2-8.0 (26H, m), 10.0-10.9 (2H, m)

10

MASS (m/z): 492  $(M^+-HC1)$ 

2) (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-Benzyl-[3-(3,3-dimethyl-2-oxobutoxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride mp: 93-101°C

IR (Nujol): 3180, 2580, 1710, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.0-1.3 (20H, m), 1.9-2.2 (4H, m), 2.4-2.8 (6H, m), 2.8-3.7 (10H, m), 4.4-5.5 (10H, m), 6.3-8.0 (26H, m), 9.9-10.8 (2H, m)

# Example 11

To an ice-cooled solution of (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[[2-bis(ethoxycarbonyl)methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol 15 (0.63 g) in ethanol (6.3 ml) was added 1N sodium hydroxide (2.6 ml). After stirring at ambient temperature for 5 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to afford a greenish solid, which was washed with ethanol and 20 dried to give the crude product (0.59 g). The crude product was purified by reverse phase HPLC ( $c_{18}$  silica gel, 15% acetonitrile in water) to disodium (2R,6'R)- and (2R,6'S)-6-[2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-hydroxyethylamino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yloxy]malonate 25 (0.38 g) as a white solid.

IR (Nujol): 3380, 1620 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR ( $D_2O$ ,  $\delta$ ): 1.4-2.3 (8H, m), 2.6-3.3 (14H, m), 6.6-6.9 (4H, m), 7.09 (2H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.6 (8H, m)

#### Example 12

A mixture of (1R,6'R)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.30 g) and 2-methoxyethylamine (6 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature for 72 hours.

30

10

15

After removal of the solvent, the residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (gradient elution, ethyl acetate then 50:1 to 25:1 to 5:1 ethyl acetate-ethanol) to give the desired product, which was solidified by the addition of chloroform. The solid was suspended in diisopropyl ether-chloroform (10:1, 11 ml) and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours at ambient temperature. The precipitate was collected by filteration and dried in vacuo to give (1R,6'R)-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-[[3-(2-methoxyethyl)aminocarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetra-hydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]ethanol (0.21 g).

mp : 55°C  $[\alpha]_D^{31} = -33.6^\circ$  (c=0.25, EtOH) NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ) : 1.2-2.2 (5H, m), 2.5-2.9 (7H, m), 3.1-3.4 (4H, m), 3.22 (3H, s), 4.39 (2H, s), 4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 5.39 (1H, d, J=4Hz), 6.64 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.67 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.98 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.4 (4H, m), 7.9-8.1 (1H, m) MASS (m/z) : 449 (M+2+H)<sup>+</sup>, 447 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20

25

3.0

## Example 13

A solution of (1R,2's)-2-[(7-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-ethanol (30 mg) and 2-methoxyethylamine (300 mg) in ethanol (0.5 ml) was stirred at ambient temperature for 22 hours and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was partitioned between ethyl acetate and sodium bicarbonate aqueous solution. The organic layer was washed twice with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was converted to the oxalate in a usual manner. The oxalate was washed with diethyl ether to afford (1R,2's)-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-[[7-(2-methoxyethyl)-aminocarbonylmethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl]amino]-ethanol oxalate (20 mg) as a colorless powder.

35 mp: 120-124°C

```
[\alpha]_D^{30.4} = -69.75^{\circ} (c=0.205, MeOH)
             IR (CHCl<sub>3</sub>): 3430, 3400, 3250, 2950-2400, 1735,
                           1650, 1605, 1240 \text{ cm}^{-1}
             NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.75 (1H, m), 2.2 (1H, m),
  5
                  2.65-2.95 (3H, m), 3.05-3.45 (11H, m), 4.42 (2H,
                  s), 4.98 (1H, d, J=9.4Hz), 5.1 (4H, br),
                  6.65-6.8 (2H, m), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8.4Hz),
                  7.35-7.55 (4H, m), 8.05 (1H, m)
 10
       Example 14
            To a mixture of (R)-2-amino-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol
       (172 mg), 3-nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-
       6-one (205 mg) and acetic acid (0.27 ml) in methanol (4
       ml) was added portionwise sodium cyanoborohydride (94 mg)
 15
       and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1.5
               The reaction mixture was diluted with water, made
       alkaline with 28% ammonia solution, and extracted with
       ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with brine, dried
       over magnesium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo.
20
       residue was purified by column chromatography on silica
      gel eluting with chloroform-methanol (50:1).
                                                       The obtained
      free amine was converted to its hydrochloride in a usual
                The resulting solid was triturated with diethyl
      ether to give a mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-
25
      nitro-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-
      1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride (220 mg).
           mp:
                  178-182°C
           IR (Nujol) : 3270, 1518, 1340 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, \delta): 1.17-1.47 (2H, m), 1.80-2.20
30
                 (4H, m), 2.25-2.45 (2H, m), 2.80-3.5 (14H, m),
                5.0-5.18 (2H, m), 6.32-6.45 (2H, m),
                7.33-7.6 (10H, m), 8.0-8.1 (2H, m),
                8.1-8.3 (2H, m), 8.75-9.05 (2H, m),
                9.3-9.7 (2H, m)
```

MASS (m/z): 361  $(M^{+}+1-HC1)$ 

### Example 15

To a solution of (R)-2-amino-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (343 mg) and 7-nitro-2-tetralone (354 mg) in methanol (9 ml), sodium cyanoborohydride (189 mg) and ว acetic acid (0.6 ml) were added at 26-29°C and the whole was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. solution, conc. hydrochloric acid (1 ml) was added at 0°C. After stirring for 3.5 hours, water (10 ml) and 28% ammonium hydroxide (2 ml) were added. The solution was 10 extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract was washed with brine, dried over potassium carbonate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate and 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (0.6 ml) was added to the solution. The resulting precipitates were 15 collected by filtration and dried to give (1R,2'R)- and (1R,2'S)-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-[(7-nitro-1,2,3,4tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]ethanol hydrochloride (0.60 The obtained powder was recrystallized from a mixture of ethanol (12 ml) and methanol (5 ml) to give (1R,2'R)-20 or (1R,2'S)-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-[(7-nitro-1,2,3,4tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]ethanol hydrochloride (0.17 g). mp : 216-219°C (dec.)  $[\alpha]_D^{21.2} = +18.5^{\circ} (c=0.35, DMSO)$ IR (Nujol): 3325, 2750, 2660 cm<sup>-1</sup> 25 NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ ,  $\delta$ ): 1.71-2.03 (1H, m), 2.28-2.52 (1H, m), 2.76-3.69 (7H, m), 5.03-5.21 (1H, m), 6.39 (1H, d, J=3.8Hz), 7.30-7.60 (5H, m), 7.92-8.13 (2H, m), 9.13 (1H, br s),

30

35

The filtrate was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was triturated with isopropanol and diethyl ether to give (1R,2'R)- and (1R,2'S)-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-[(7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]ethanol hydrochloride (0.32 g).

9.74 (1H, br s)

A solution of (1R,2'R)- and (1R,2'S)-1-(3-15 chlorophenyl)-2-[(7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]ethanol hydrochloride (200 mg) in methanol (5 ml) was made alkaline with 28% ammonium hydroxide solution. The solution was extracted with ethyl acetate and the extract was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous sodium 20 sulfate, and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in a mixture of ethyl acetate and methanol and the solution was hydrogenated over 10% palladium on carbon (8.5 mg). After removing the catalyst by filtration, 4Nhydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (0.4 ml) was added to 25 the filtrate. The solution was evaporated in vacuo and the residue was triturated with isopropanol and diethyl ether to give (1R,2'R)- and (1R,2'S)-2-[(7-amino-1,2,3,4tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol dihydrochloride (191 mg).

30 mp: 182-185°C

IR (Nujol): 2750-2500 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.66-2.02 (2H, m), 2.24-2.46 (2H, m), 2.60-3.81 (16H, m), 5.12 (2H, br d, J=7.7Hz), 6.40 (2H, br m), 7.06-7.60 (14H, m), 9.04 (2H, br s), 9.70 (2H, br s), 10.31 (4H, br s)

#### Example 17

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 14.

3 1) (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[(3-Bromo-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3chlorophenyl)ethanol

mp : 107-120°C

IR (Nujol): 3140, 3060, 1590, 1570 cm<sup>-1</sup>

- 10 NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub> - D<sub>2</sub>O,  $\delta$ ): 1.40-2.15 (8H, m), 2.48-3.10 (14H, m), 4.50-4.67 (2H, m), 6.95 (2H, d, J=7.8Hz), 7.14-7.42 (12H, m)
- 2) Ethyl  $3-\{(RS)-8-[(R)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlo$ 15 hydroxyethylamino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-y1}propionate

mp: 81-85°C

IR (Nujol): 3300, 3100, 1720 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.23 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.44-2.14 20 (6H, m), 1.60-2.90 (4H, br m), 2.49-3.10 (22H, m), 4.12 (4H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.50-4.66 (2H, m), 6.90-7.44 (14H, m)

# Example 18

25 The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 15.

Ethyl  $(E)-3-\{(RS)-8-[(R)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-(3$ hydroxyethylamino]-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-2-yl}acrylate oxalate (2:1) 30

> mp: 123-140°C

IR (Nujol):  $3250, 1700 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ 

NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ ,  $\delta$ ): 1.25 (6H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.13-1.44 (2H, m), 1.71-2.40 (6H, m), 2.65-3.36 (14H, m),

4.18 (4H, q, J=7.0Hz), 4.88-5.07 (2H, m),

```
3.66-7.40 (10H, br m), 6.56 (2H, d, J=16.0Hz), 7.12-7.70 (16H, m)
```

### Example 19

5 A mixture of (1R,6'R) - or (1R,6'S) - or (1S,6'R) - or (1S,6'S)-1-(2-naphthy1)-2-[N-benzyl-(3-hydroxy-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]ethanol (isomer A) (110 mg), 60% sodium hydride in oil (11 mg), ethyl bromoacetate (46 mg) in N,N-dimethylformamide (2 ml) was 10 stirred at ambient temperature. The resulting mixture was diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. extract was washed with brine, dried, evaporated in vacuo to afford (1R,6'R)- or (1R,6'S)- or (1S,6'R)- or (1S,6'S)-1-(2-naphthyl-2-[N-benzyl-(3-ethoxycarbonyl-15 methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]ethanol as an oil. (single isomer A) NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.29 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.0-2.8 (11H, m), 3.74 (1H, d, J=13.7Hz), 4.00 (1H, d, J=13.7Hz), 4.27 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.59 (2H, s), 20 4.72 (1H, dd, J=3.6Hz, 9.9Hz), 6.58 (1H, dd, J=2.7Hz, 8.2Hz), 6.78 (1H, d, J=2.7Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8.2Hz), 7.2-7.5 (7H, m), 7.8 (4H, m), 8.01 (1H, s) MASS (m/z): 524  $(M^++1)$ , 506 and 366

25

# Example 20

The following compound was obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 19.

(1R,6'R)- or (1R,6'S)- or (1S,6'R)- or (1S,6'S)-1-(2-Naphthyl)-2-[N-benzyl-(3-ethoxycarbonyl-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)-amino]ethanol. (single isomer B)

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, δ): 1.2 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.3-3.1 (12H, m), 3.70 (1H, d, J=13.7Hz), 3.77 (1H, d,

. 2

```
J=13.7Hz), 4.20 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.5 (2H, s), 4.5-4.7 (1H, m), 6.59 (1H, dd, J=2.6Hz, 8.1Hz), 6.73 (1H, d, J=2.6Hz), 6.94 (1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.2-7.5 (7H, m), 7.6-7.8 (4H, m), 8.01 (1H, s) MASS (m/z) : 524 (M<sup>+</sup>+1), 506 and 366
```

### Example 21

A mixture of 8-benzylamino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5Hbenzocyclohepten-2-ol hydrochloride (5.0 g), 10 N,N-diisopropylethylamine (5.7 ml), (R)-3-chlorostyreneoxide (3.8 g), and ethanol (16.4 ml) was refluxed for 40hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of 15 the crude product by column chromatography on silica gel (elution; 4:1 n-hexane-ethyl acetate) gave a diastereomeric mixtures of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[Nbenzyl-(3-hydroxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-20 6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (6.3 g) as an oil. IR (Film):  $3250 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 0.8-1.0 (1H, m), 1.1-1.5 (3H, m), 1.5-1.8 (1H, m), 1.8-2.1 (4H, m), 2.1-2.4 (1H, m), 2.4-2.9 (11H, m), 3.07 (1H, dd, J=10Hz, 25 13Hz), 3.75 (2H, q, J=13Hz), 3.80 (2H, q, J=13Hz), 4.0-5.2 (2H, br m), 4.35 (1H, dd, J=4Hz, 10Hz), 4.46 (1H, dd, J=4Hz, 10Hz), 6.52 (2H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.61 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.64 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.89 (2H, d, J=8Hz), 7.0-7.4 30 (18H, m)MASS (m/z): 424  $(M+2+H)^+$ , 422  $(M+H)^+$ 

#### Example 22

A solution of (R)-3-chlorostyrene oxide (48 mg), and 6,7-dihydro-2-nitro-5H-benzocyclohepten-7-amine (84 mg) in

15

ethanol (3 ml) and dioxane (1 ml) was refluxed for 1 hour and evaporated in vacuo. The residue was chromatographed over silica gel using dichloromethane-methanol as an eluent and the obtained oil was converted to oxalate in a usual manner. The oxalate was crystallized from diethyl ether to afford (1R,7'R)- and (1R,7'S)-1-(3-chlorophenyl)-2-[(6,7-dihydro-2-nitro-5H-benzocyclohepten-7-yl)amino]-ethanol oxalate (48 mg) as a pale brown powder.

mp : 100-108°C (dec.)

10 IR (Nujol): 3300, 2750-2300, 1710, 1600, 1515, 1350 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 2.1 (2H, m), 2.35 (2H, m), 2.95-3.3 (8H, m), 4.15 (2H, m), 4.95 (2H, m), 6.14 (1H, br d, J=12.8Hz), 6.20 (1H, br d, J=12.8Hz), 6.86 (2H, d, J=12.8Hz), 7.25-7.55 (10H, m), 8.06 (2H, dd, J=8.4Hz, 2.4Hz), 8.19 (2H, d, J=2.4Hz), 6.0-9.0 (8H, br)

FAB-MASS (m/z): 361 and 359 (M<sup>+</sup>-C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>+1)

# 20 Example 23

A solution of 2,2"-oxybis[2-hydroxy-2'acetonaphthone] (77.3 mg), (S)-2-amino-7-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene hydrochloride (114.3 mg) and triethylamine (0.07 ml) in ethanol (3 ml) was 25 stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes and cooled with ice water. Sodium borohydride (45.4 mg) was added to the mixture and the resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. 30 extract was dried over magnesium sulfate and evaporated in The obtained oil was converted to hydrochloride in a usual manner to give a colorless powder of (1R,2'S)- and (1S,2'S)-2-[(7-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2naphthyl)amino}-1-(2-naphthyl)ethanol hydrochloride (90.7 35 mg).

```
inp : 154-156°C
             TR (Nujol): 3350, 2800-2300, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.20 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.7-2.0
                  (2H, m), 2.2-3.6 (16H, m), 4.15 (4H, q,
  5 .
                  J=7.1Hz), 4.72 (4H, s), 5.2-5.4 (2H, m), 6.3-6.4
                  (2H, m), 6.6-6.8 (4H, m), 7.02 (2H, d, J=8.3Hz),
                 7.5-7.7 (6H, m), 7.8-8.1 (8H, m), 9.03 (2H, br
                  s), 9.63 (2H, br s)
            MASS (m/z): 262, 233
 10
       Example 24
            The following compounds were obtained according to a
       similar manner to that of Example 23.
15
            (1R,2'S)- and (1S,2'S)-2-[(7-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-
       1)
            1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]-1-(1-naphthyl)-
            ethanol hydrochloride
            mp: 70-84°C
            IR (Nujol): 3300, 2750-2250, 1750 cm<sup>-1</sup>
20
            NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.20 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.6-2.0
                 (2H, m), 2.2-3.6 (16H, m), 4.15 (4H, q,
                 J=7.1Hz), 4.70 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 5.8-6.0
                 (2H, m), 6.33 (2H, d, J=3.7Hz), 6.6-6.8 (4H, m),
                 7.01 (2H, d, J=8.3Hz), 7.5-7.7 (6H, m), 7.80
25
                 (2H, d, J=6.9Hz), 7.9-8.1 (4H, m), 8.3-8.4 (2H,
                m), 8.91 (2H, br s), 9.96 (2H, br s)
           MASS (m/z): 420 (M^++1), 262, 233
      2)
           (1R,2'S)- and (1S,2'S)-2-[(7-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-
30
           1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-naphthyl)amino]-1-(5-indanyl)-
           ethanol hydrochloride
           mp : 141-146°C
           IR (Nujol): 3325, 2750, 2510, 2490, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>
```

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.29 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 2.01 (2H, t,

J=7.4Hz), 2.08 (2H, t, J=7.4Hz), 2.00-2.28 (2H,

m), 2.42-2.62 (2H, m), 2.65-3.02 (14H, m), 3.10-3.61 (10H, m), 4.25 (4H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.51 (4H, s), 5.44 (2H, br d, J=8.3Hz), 6.55 (2H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.71 (2H, dd, J=2.5Hz, 8.4Hz), 6.97 (2H, d, J=8.4Hz), 7.14-7.26 (4H, m), 7.31 (2H, s), 8.91 (2H, br s), 10.17 (2H, br s)

# Example 25

A mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-benzyl-(3ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-10 benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol (0.34 g), 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet; 68 mg), ammonium formate (0.25 g), and ethanol (17 ml) was refluxed for 20 minutes. The catalyst was filtered off and washed with ethanol. Removal of the solvent in vacuo 15. afforded the residue, which was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine, dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the crude product 20 by column chromatography on silica gel (elution; 25:1 ethyl acetate-ethanol) gave a diastereomeric mixtures of (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1phenylethanol (0.21 g) as an oil. This oil was dissolved 25 in ethyl acetate (2.1 ml) and treated with 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (1.4 ml). After removal of the solvent, the mixture was pulverized with diisopropyl ether-ethyl acetate (3:1, 2.0 ml). The precipitate was collected, washed with diisopropyl ether, and dried in 30 vacuo to give a diastereomeric mixtures of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6's)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino}-1-phenylethanol hydrochloride as a white solid. Chiral HPLC analysis revealed that partial epimerization of the hydroxyl group 35 at benzylic position of the product was occurred during

the reaction.

mp : 152-154°C

IR (Nujol) : 3350, 3270, 3160, 2770, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ) : 1.0-1.4 (2H, m), 1.19 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.20 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.7-2.1 (4H, m), 2.2-2.4 (2H, m), 2.5-2.8 (4H, m), 2.9-3.4 (10H, m), 4.15 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.18 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.70 (2H, s), 4.71 (2H, s), 4.9-5.1 (2H, m), 6.20 (2H, d, J=4Hz), 6.67 (2H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.81 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.87 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.5 (10H, m), 8.6-9.0 (2H, br m), 9.1-9.6 (2H, br m)

MASS (m/z) : 384 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

# 15 Example 26

A mixture of (S)-N-benzyl-3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-amine (35.3 g), (R)-3-chlorostylene oxide (>97% ee; 20.0 g), and ethanol (99 ml) was refluxed for 45 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo to give the 20 residue, which was purified by column chromatography on silica gel (SiO<sub>2</sub>; 230-400 mesh, elution; dichloromethane) to give (1R,6'S)-2-[N-benzyl-(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-25 chlorophenyl)ethanol (37.7 g) as a pale yellow oil. oil was dissolved in ethyl acetate (340 ml) and treated with 4N hydrogen chloride in ethyl acetate (37 ml) in an ice-bath. Then the ice-bath was removed, and the solution was warmed to 40°C and slowly diluted with pre-warmed 30 (40°C) diisopropyl ether (300 ml). The resulting suspension was allowed to cool to ambient temperature and stirred for a total of 3.5 hours. The mixture was filtered and the cake was washed with diisopropyl ether-ethyl acetate (4:5, 90 ml). The product was dried in vacuo to give (1R,6'S)-2-[N-benzyl-(3-ethoxycarbonyl-35

methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)-amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride (35.7 g) as a white solid. Chiral HPLC analysis indicated that the product was >99% diastereomerically pure.

 $[\alpha]_{D}^{22} = +29.2^{\circ} (c=0.40, EtOH)$ 

mp: 152-153°C

IR (Nujol): 3270, 2670, 2600, 1750 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR analysis revealed that the product consisted of two rotamers in dimethyl sulfoxide.

10 Chemical shifts are shown for the major rotamer.

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.0-1.4 (1H, m), 1.22 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.9-2.3 (2H, m), 2.3-2.5 (1H, m), 2.5-2.9 (2H, m), 2.9-3.7 (5H, m), 4.18 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.4-4.8 (3H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.3-6.4 (1H, m), 6.6-6.8 (1H, m), 6.9-7.0 (1H, m), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.6 (7H, m), 7.8-8.0 (2H, m), 9.8-10.0 (1H, m)

MASS (m/z): 510 (M+2+H)<sup>+</sup>, 508 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

20 Example 27

15

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 26.

1) (1R,6'R)-2-[N-Benzyl-(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-

1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride

 $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -53.2^{\circ} (c=0.53, EtOH)$ 

mp : >128°C

IR (Nujol): 3250, 2600, 1760 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR analysis revealed that the product consisted of two rotamers in dimethyl sulfoxide.

Chemical shifts are shown for the major rotamer.

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.0-1.4 (1H, m), 1.21 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.9-2.3 (3H, m), 2.4-2.9 (3H, m),

35 2.9-4.0 (4H, m), 4.16 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.70 (2H,

```
s), 4.4-5.0 (3H, m), 6.49 (1H, br m), 6.64 (1H,
                  dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.83 (1H, br s), 6.9-7.1 (1H,
                  m), 7.2-7.6 (7H, m), 7.84 (2H, br s), 10.2-10.6
                   (1H, br m)
  5
             MASS (m/z): 510 (M+2+H)^+, 508 (M+H)^+
        2)
             (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[N-Benzyl-(3-pentyloxy-
             6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-
             (3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
 10
             mp: 154-165°C
             IR (Nujol) : 3280, 2600, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.9-1.0 (6H, m), 1.0-1.5 (10H,
                  m), 1.6-1.8 (4H, m), 1.85-2.2 (4H, m), 2.35-2.8
                  (6H, m), 2.95-3.7 (10H, m), 3.8-4.0 (4H, m),
 15
                  4.4-5.5 (6H, m), 6.25-7.95 (26H, m), 9.9-10.2
                  (2H, m)
       3)
            (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[N-Benzyl-[3-(2-
            oxopentyloxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-
20
            6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
            mp: 79-85°C
            IR (Nujol): 3200, 2600, 1720, 1610 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.87 (6H, t, J=7.3Hz), 1.0-1.4
                 (2H, m), 1.4-1.7 (4H, m), 1.8-2.3 (4H, m),
25
                 2.3-2.9 (10H, m), 2.9-3.7 (10H, m), 4.4-5.6
                 (10H, m), 6.2-8.0 (26H, m), 10.1-11.1 (2H, m)
            MASS (m/z) : 506 (M^{+}+1-HC1)
            (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[N-Benzyl-[3-((RS)-2-
      4)
30
           oxopentan-3-yloxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclo-
           hepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol
           hydrochloride
           mp:
                  104-109°C
           IR (Nujol): 3200, 2580, 1710, 1600 cm<sup>-1</sup>
35
           NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.9-1.35 (8H, m), 1.6-2.25 (14H,
```

```
m), 2.35-2.9 (6H, m), 2.9-3.7 (10H, m), 4.3-5.5 (8H, m), 6.3-8.0 (26H, m), 9.8-10.8 (2H, m) MASS (m/z): 506 (M<sup>+</sup>+1-HCl)
```

5 (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-Benzyl-[2-bis(ethoxy-carbonyl)methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclo-hepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride

mp : >95°C

IR (Nujol): 3400, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.1-1.4 (2H, m), 1.19 (12H, t, J=7Hz), 1.8-2.3 (4H, m), 2.3-2.9 (8H, m), 2.9-3.8 (8H, m), 4.22 (8H, q, J=7Hz), 4.3-4.8 (6H, m), 5.62 (1H, s), 5.64 (1H, s), 6.3-6.6 (2H, m), 6.7-6.9 (4H, m), 7.1-8.0 (2OH, m), 9.7-10.1 (1H, m)

MASS (m/z): 582  $(M+2+H)^+$ , 580  $(M+H)^+$ 

# Example 28

- The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 21.
- 1) (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-Benzyl-(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)-25 amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol IR (Film): 3400, 3000, 2900, 2830, 1740 cm<sup>-1</sup> NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.28 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.30 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.2-1.4 (2H, m), 1.5-3.0 (2H, br m), 1.6-1.8 (1H, m), 1.8-2.9 (18H, m), 3.09 (1H, dd, 30 J=10Hz, 13Hz), 3.77 (2H, q, J=13Hz), 3.82 (2H, q, J=13Hz), 4.26 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.28 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.30 (1H, dd, J=3Hz, 10Hz), 4.48 (1H, dd, J=3Hz, 10Hz), 4.57 (2H, s), 4.59 (2H, s), 6.5-6.7 (2H, m), 6.73 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.78 (1H, 35 d, J=2Hz), 6.95 (2H, d, J=8Hz), 7.1-7.4 (18H, m)

10

MASS (m/z): 510  $(M+2+H)^+$ , 508  $(M+H)^+$ 

2) (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-Benzyl-[3-((RS)-1-ethoxycarbonyl)ethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzo-cyclohepten-2-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol mp: 90-99°C

IR (Film): 3300, 2580, 1730 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.0-1.4 (8H, m), 1.4-1.6 (6H, m), 1.8-2.2 (4H, m), 2.4-2.9 (6H, m), 2.9-3.7 (10H, m), 4.0-4.3 (4H, m), 4.4-5.6 (8H, m), 6.3-8.0 (26H, m), 10-11.2 (2H, m)

### Example 29

A mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[N-benzyl-[3-15 (2-oxopropoxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride (290 mg) was catalitically hydrogenated at ambient temperature in a mixture of ethanol (3 ml) and chlorobenzene (3 ml) using 10% palladium on carbon (50% wet, 20 mg). After removal 20 of the catalyst, the solvent was removed by evaporation. To the residue, ethyl acetate and water were added and the organic layer was separated, washed with an aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate and concentrated in The residue was purified by column chromatography on silica gel eluting with chloroform-methanol (50:1). 25 The fractions containing object compound were collected and concentrated in vacuo to give (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[[3-(2-oxopropoxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol. 30

2) The obtained free amine was converted to its hydrochloride in a usual manner. The resulting solid was triturated with diethyl ether to give a mixture of (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[[3-(2-oxopropoxy)-6,7,8,9-

35 tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-

```
chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride.
             mp : 155-161°C
             IR (Nujol) : 1720, 1575 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.1-1.35 (2H, m), 1.75-2.1 (4H,
   5
                  m), 2.14 (6H, s), 2.2-2.4 (2H, m), 2.6-2.8 (4H,
                  m), 2.9-3.3 (10H, m), 4.73 (2H, s), 4.75 (2H,
                  s), 4.95-5.1 (2H, m), 6.3-6.4 (2H, m), 6.6-6.7
                  (2H, m), 6.75-6.9 (2H, m), 6.95-7.1 (2H, m),
                  7.3-7.55 (8H, m), 8.7-8.9 (2H, m), 9.05-9.35
  10
                  (2H, m)
             MASS (m/z) : 388 (M+1-HC1)^+
       Example 30
            The following compounds were obtained according to a
       similar manner to that of Example 29-1).
 15
            (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[[3-(3,3-Dimethyl-2-
       1)
            oxobutoxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-
            yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol
 20
            mp : 100-103°C
            IR (Nujol): 1715, 1600 \text{ cm}^{-1}
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.24 (18H, s), 1.4-3.1 (22H, m),
                 4.5-4.65 (2H, m), 4.84 (4H, s), 6.55-6.75 (4H,
                 m), 6.95-7.05 (2H, m), 7.15-7.4 (8H, m)
25
           MASS (m/z): 430 (M+1)^+
      2)
           (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[(3-Pentyloxy-6,7,8,9-
           tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-
           chlorophenyl)ethanol
30
           mp : 102-106°C
           IR (Nujol): 1605, 1570, 1285 cm<sup>-1</sup>
           NMR (CDC1<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 0.92 (6H, t, J=7.0Hz), 1.3-2.1
                (22H, m), 2.5-3.1 (14H, m), 3.92 (4H, t,
                J=6.5Hz), 4.5-4.6 (2H, m), 6.6-6.75 (4H, m),
35
                6.95-7.05 (2H, m), 7.15-7.40 (8H, m)
```

```
3)
             (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[[3-(2-Oxopentyloxy)-
             6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-
             (3-chlorophenyl)ethanol
             mp: 94-95°C
  5
             IR (Nujol): 3320, 3260, 1720 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 0.94 (6H, t, J=7.4Hz), 1.4-2.1
                  (12H, m), 2.5-3.1 (18H, m), 4.51 (4H, s),
                  4.45-4.65 (2H, m), 6.55-6.75 (4H, m), 6.9-7.05
                  (2H, m), 7.15-7.4 (8H, m).
 10
       4)
             (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[[3-((RS)-1-Ethoxy-
            carbonyl)ethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclo-
            hepten-2-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol
            mp: 97-101°C
15
            IR (Nujol): 1742, 1605 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.24 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.60 (6H, d,
                  J=6.8Hz), 1.50-2.10 (10H, m), 2.45-3.1 (14H, m),
                  4.10-4.30 (4H, m), 4.50-4.65 (2H, m), 4.70 (2H,
                 q, J=6.8Hz), 6.50-6.65 (2H, m), 6.65-6.75 (2H,
20
                 m), 6.90-7.00 (2H, m), 7.15-7.40 (8H, m)
       5)
            (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-Ethoxycarbonylmethyl-
            amino-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)-
            amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol
25
            IR (CHCl_3): 3420, 1735, 1615, 1580 cm<sup>-1</sup>
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.28 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.34-2.20
                 (8H, m), 2.54-3.16 (16H, m), 3.86 (4H, s), 4.22
                 (4H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.31 (4H, br s), 4.72-4.89
                 (2H, m), 6.28-6.54 (4H, m), 6.89 (2H, d,
30
                 J=8.0Hz), 7.26-7.46 (8H, m)
           MASS (m/z): 417 (M^+), 275, 246
           (1R,6'R) - or (1R,6'S) - (1S,6'R) - or (1S,6'S) -1-(2-
      6)
           Naphthyl)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-
35
           tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]ethanol
```

```
(single isomer B)
              mp: 97-99°C
              [\alpha]_D = -26.42^{\circ} (c=0.28, CH_2Cl_2)
              IR (Nujol): 3200, 1778 cm<sup>-1</sup>
   5
              NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.25 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.48 (1H,
                   br), 1.84 (2H, m), 2.11 (1H, m), 2.6-3.0 (7H,
                   m), 3.17 (1H, dd, J=8.8Hz, 3.2Hz), 4.22 (2H, q,
                   J=7.1Hz), 4.55 (2H, s), 5.05 (1H, m), 6.62 (1H,
                   dd, J=2.5Hz, 8.1Hz), 6.76 (1H, d, J=2.5Hz), 6.96
  10
                   (1H, d, J=8.1Hz), 7.4-7.5 (3H, m), 7.8-7.8 (4H,
                   m)
             MASS (m/z): 434 (M^++1) and 416
        7)
             (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[(3-Hydroxy-6,7,8,9-
 15
             tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-
             chlorophenyl)ethanol
             mp:
                   180-181°C
             IR (Nujol): 3150, 2620 cm<sup>-1</sup>
             NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, \delta): 1.2-2.0 (10H, m), 2.4-2.9 (14H,
 20
                  m), 4.5-4.7 (2H, m), 5.39 (2H, br s), 6.43 (2H,
                  dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.5-6.6 (2H, m), 6.83 (2H, d,
                  J=8Hz), 7.2-7.5 (8H, m), 8.99 (2H, br s)
            MASS (m/z): 334 (M+2+H)^+, 332 (M+H)^+
25
            (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[[2-Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)-
       8)
            methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]-
            amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol
            mp: 95°C
            IR (Nujol): 1700, 1740 \text{ cm}^{-1}
30
            NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, \delta): 1.30 (12H, t, J=7Hz), 1.4-1.7 (2H,
                 m), 1.7-2.0 (4H, m), 2.0-2.3 (2H, m), 2.6-3.8
                 (18H, m), 4.31 (8H, q, J=7Hz), 4.7-4.9 (2H, m),
                 5.15 (2H, s), 6.65 (2H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.75
                 (2H, d, J=2Hz), 7.06 (2H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.3
35
                 (6H, m), 7.37 (2H, br s)
```

5

MASS (m/z): 492  $(M+2+H)^+$ , 490  $(M+H)^+$ 

9) (1R,6'R)-2-[(3-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol

mp : 98-100°C [ $\alpha$ ]<sub>D</sub><sup>29</sup> = -38.3° (c=0.62, EtOH)

IR (Nujol) : 3500-2500, 1760, 1720 cm<sup>-1</sup>

NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, δ): 1.18 (3H, t, J=7Hz), 1.2-2.1 (6H, m), 2.4-2.9 (6H, m), 4.14 (2H, q, J=7Hz), 4.5-4.6 (1H, m), 4.68 (2H, s), 5.40 (1H, d, J=4Hz), 6.58 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz), 6.72 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 6.96 (1H, d, J=8Hz), 7.2-7.5 (4H, m)

MASS (m/z): 420  $(M+2+H)^+$ , 418  $(M+H)^+$ 

15

10

10) (1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[[3-(2-Ethoxycarbonylpropan-2-yloxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol

mp: 101-115°C

20 IR (Nujol):  $1735, 1600 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ 

NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>,  $\delta$ ): 1.24 (6H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.57 (12H, s), 1.40-2.05 (8H, m), 2.45-3.10 (14H, m), 4.21 (4H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.12 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz),

4.50-4.60 (2H, m), 6.50-6.65 (2H, m), 6.65-6.70 (2H, m), 6.85-7.00 (2H, m), 7.15-7.40 (8H, m)

#### Example 31

The following compounds were obtained according to a similar manner to that of Example 29.

30

25

1) (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-Ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride

mp: 103°C  $[\alpha]_D^{22} = +11.5^{\circ} (c=0.32, EtOH)$ 

```
IR (Nujol): 3380, 2400, 1760 cm^{-1}
            NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 1.1-1.4 (1H, m), 1.19 (3H, t,
                 J=7Hz), 1.7-2.1 (2H, m), 2.2-2.4 (1H, m),
                 2.6-2.8 (2H, m), 2.9-3.3 (5H, m), 4.15 (2H, q,
  5
                 J=7Hz), 4.70 (2H, s), 5.0-5.2 (1H, br m), 6.34
                 (1H, br d, J=4Hz), 6.67 (1H, dd, J=2Hz, 8Hz),
                6.88 (1H, d, J=2Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J=8Hz),
                7.3-7.6 (4H, m), 8.6-9.4 (2H, br m)
           MASS (m/z): 420 (M+2+H)^+, 418 (M+H)^+
10
      2)
           (1R,6'R) - and (1R,6'S) -2-[[3-(2-Oxobutoxy)-6,7,8,9-
           tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]amino]-1-(3-
           chlorophenyl)ethanol hydrochloride
                 119-121°C
15
           IR (Nujol) : 3400 3190, 1715 cm^{-1}
           NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.95 (3H, t, J=7.3Hz), 0.96 (3H,
                t, J=7.3Hz), 1.1-1.35 (2H, m), 1.75-2.1 (4H, m),
                2.2-2.4 (2H, m), 2.5-2.8 (8H, m), 2.95-3.3 (10H,
                m), 4.74 (2H, s), 4.75 (2H, s), 4.95-5.1 (2H,
20
               m), 6.3-6.4 (2H, m), 6.6-6.7 (2H, m), 6.75-6.9
                (2H, m), 6.95-7.1 (2H, m), 7.3-7.55 (8H, m),
               8.7-8.95 (2H, m), 9.1-9.4 (2H, m)
          MASS (m/z): 402 (M+1-HC1)^+
```

# 25 Example 32

The following compounds were obtained by reacting the compounds, which were prepared according to a similar manner to that of Example 29-1), with oxalic acid.

(1R,6'R)- and (1R,6'S)-2-[[3-Bis(ethoxycarbonyl)-methoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]-amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol oxalate
 NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub> + D<sub>2</sub>O, δ): 1.1-1.4 (14H, m), 1.7-2.1 (4H, m), 2.1-2.4 (2H, m), 2.6-2.8 (4H, m), 2.9-3.4 (10H, m), 4.0-4.4 (8H, m), 4.8-5.0 (2H, m)

```
in), 5.57 (2H, s), 6.6-7.2 (6H, m), 7.3-7.6 (8H,
                m)
           MASS (m/z): 492 (M+2+H)^+, 490 (M+H)^+
 5
      2)
           (1R, 6'R) - and (1R, 6'S) -2-[[3-((RS)-2-Oxopentan-3-
           yloxy)-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl]-
           amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol oxalate
           mp: 70-79°C
           IR (Nujol) : 1710 \text{ cm}^{-1}
10
           NMR (DMSO-d_6, \delta): 0.75-1.0 (8H, m), 1.15-1.4 (2H,
                m), 1.7-2.05 (6H, m), 2.13 (6H, s), 2.15-2.35
                (2H, m), 2.4-3.35 (14H, m), 4.5-4.65 (2H, m),
                4.85-5.0 (2H, m), 6.5-7.1 (6H, m), 7.3-7.6 (8H,
           MASS (m/z): 416 (M+1-C_2H_2O_4)^+
15 -
      3)
           (1R,6'R) - or (1R,6'S) - or (1S,6'R) - or (1S,6'S) -1-(2-
           Naphthyl)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-
           tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]ethanol
20
           oxalate (single isomer A)
           mp: 90-99°C
           IR (KBr): 3183, 2856, 1751, 1207 cm^{-1}
           NMR (CDCl<sub>2</sub>, \delta): 1.25 (3H, t, J=7.1Hz), 1.5-3.4
                (12H, m), 4.2 (2H, q, J=7.1Hz), 4.46 (2H, s),
25
                4.86 (1H, br), 6.5-6.9 (3H, m), 7.2-7.4 (3H, m),
                7.6-7.8 (4H, m)
           MASS (m/z): 434 (M^++1) and 416
```

#### CLAIMS

1. A compound of the formula :

5

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$

$$[I]$$

10

15

R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, lower alkyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkenyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkoxy optionally substituted with acyl, or amino optionally substituted with acyl(lower)alkyl,

20

R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, an N-protective group, or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio,

25

n is an integer of 0 to 3, and

30

provided that when n is 1, then

 R<sup>1</sup> is a condensed aromatic hydrocarbon group or a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with halogen, hydroxy, protected hydroxy, aryloxy, lower alkoxy, halo(lowr)alkoxy, nitro, cyano, amino or acylamino, or

2)	R <sup>2</sup> is halogen, nitro, lower alkyl optionally
	substituted with acyl, lower alkenyl optionally
	substituted with acyl, or amino optionally
	substituted with acyl(lower)alkyl, or
3 /	p <sup>3</sup> ic an Manatastian

- 3) R<sup>3</sup> is an N-protective group or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio, or
- 4) a heavy solid line means a double bond, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.
- 2. A compound according to claim 1, wherein R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl optionally substituted with halogen,
  - is lower alkoxy substituted with carboxy or esterified carboxy,
- 15 R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen,
  n is 0, 2 or 3, and
  a heavy solid line means a single bond.
- 3. A compound according to claim 2,
  wherein R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl substituted with halogen, and
  R<sup>2</sup> is methoxy substituted with lower
  alkoxycarbonyl.
- 4. A compound according to claim 3,
  wherein R<sup>1</sup> is phenyl substituted with chlorine,
  R<sup>2</sup> is methoxy substituted with
  ethoxycarbonyl, and
  n is 2.
- 30 5. A compound of claim 4, which is (1R,6'S)-2-[(3-ethoxycarbonylmethoxy-6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5H-benzocyclohepten-6-yl)amino]-1-(3-chlorophenyl)ethanol or its hydrochloride.

10

15

20

25

30

6. A process for preparing a compound of the formula :

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$
[I]

wherein R<sup>1</sup> is aryl or a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with halogen, hydroxy, protected hydroxy, aryloxy, lower alkoxy, halo(lowr)alkoxy, nitro, cyano, amino or acylamino,

R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, halogen, nitro, hydroxy, lower alkyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkenyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkoxy optionally substituted with acyl, or amino optionally substituted with acyl(lower)alkyl,

R<sup>3</sup> is hydrogen, an N-protective group, or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio,

is an integer of 0 to 3, and

a heavy solid line means a single bond or a double bond,

provided that when n is 1, then

- 1) R<sup>1</sup> is a condensed aromatic hydrocarbon group or a heterocyclic group, each of which may be substituted with halogen, hydroxy, protected hydroxy, aryloxy, lower alkoxy, halo(lowr)alkoxy, nitro, cyano, amino or acylamino, or
- 2) R<sup>2</sup> is halogen, nitro, lower alkyl optionally substituted with acyl, lower alkenyl optionally substituted with acyl, or amino optionally substituted with acyl(lower)alkyl, or

Ņ

5

- 3) R<sup>3</sup> is an N-protective group or lower alkyl optionally substituted with lower alkylthio, or 4) a heavy solid line means a double bond, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, which comprises,
- a) reacting a compound of the formula:

with a compound of the formula :

or its salt to provide a compound of the formula :

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$
[I]

or its salt, in the above formulas,  ${\bf R}^1$ ,  ${\bf R}^2$ ,  ${\bf R}^3$ , n and a heavy solid line are each as defined above, or

b) subjecting a compound of the formula:

$$R^{1}$$
-CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-N  $R_{a}^{3}$  [Ia]

35

10

15

20

or its salt to deesterification reaction to provide a compound of the formula :

$$R^{1}$$
- $CH$ - $CH_{2}$ - $N$ - $R_{b}^{2}$  [Ib]

or its salt, in the above formulas,

R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, n and a heavy solid line are each as defined above,

Ra is lower alkyl substituted with esterified carboxy, lower alkenyl substituted with esterified carboxy, lower alkoxy substituted with esterified carboxy, or amino substituted with esterified carboxy(lower)alkyl, and

R<sub>b</sub> is lower alkyl substituted with carboxy, lower alkenyl substituted with carboxy, lower alkenyl substituted with carboxy, lower alkoxy substituted with carboxy, or amino substituted with carboxy(lower)alkyl, or

c) reacting a compound of the formula :

25
$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$
[Ic]

or its salt with a compound of the formula :

$$x-R^4$$
 [IV]

WO 93/15041

10

15

to provide a compound of the formula :

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$
[Id]

or its salt, in the above formulas,

R<sub>a</sub> is an N-protective group or lower alkyl substituted with lower alkylthio,

 $R_{C}^{2}$  is lower alkoxy optionally substituted with acyl,  $R^{4}$  is lower alkyl optionally substituted with acyl, and

X is acid residue, or

d) reacting a compound of the formula :

OH 
$$R^3$$

$$R^1-CH-CH_2-N$$

$$(CH_2)_n$$
[Ib]

or its reactive derivative at the carboxy group

or a salt thereof with an amine to provide a compound

of the formula:

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$
[Ie]

or its salt, in the above formulas,  $R^1$ ,  $R_b^2$ ,  $R^3$ , n and a heavy solid line are each as defined above, and

R<sup>2</sup> is lower alkyl, lower alkenyl, lower alkoxy, each of which is substituted with carbamoyl optionally substituted with lower alkyl, lower alkoxy(lower)alkyl, arylsulfonyl, lower alkylsulfonyl or a heterocyclic group, or amino substituted with carbamoyl(lower)alkyl, carbamoyl in which may be substituted with lower alkyl, lower alkoxy(lower)alkyl, arylsulfonyl, lower alkylsulfonyl or a heterocyclic group, or

e) reacting a compound of the formula :

or its salt with a compound of the formula :

O 
$$CH_2$$
  $R^2$  [VI]

or its salt in the presence of a reducing agent to provide a compound of the formula:

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-NH$$
(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>
(If]

or its salt, in the above formulas,  ${\mbox{\bf R}}^1$ ,  ${\mbox{\bf R}}^2$  and n are each as defined above, or

f) subjecting a compound of the formula:

or its salt to reduction to provide a compound of the formula :

10

5

$$\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{OH} & \mathbb{R}^3 \\
\mathbb{R}^1 - \text{CH} - \text{CH}_2 - \mathbb{N} & \text{CH}_2 \\
\end{array}$$
[Ih]

15

or its salt, in the above formulas,  ${\bf R}^1$ ,  ${\bf R}^3$ , n and a heavy solid line are each as defined above, or

g) reacting a compound of the formula:

25

with a compound of the formula :

$$\frac{R^3}{10}$$

$$\frac{R^3}{(CH_2)_n}$$
[III]

or its salt in the presence of a reducing agent to provide a compound of the formula:

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$

or its salt, in the above formulas,  $R^{1}$ ,  $R^{2}$ ,  $R^{3}$ , n and a heavy solid line are each as defined above, or

10

subjecting a compound of the formula: h)

$$R^{1}-CH-CH_{2}-N$$

$$(CH_{2})_{n}$$
[Ii]

or its salt to elimination reaction of the N-protective group to provide a compound of the formula :

20

$$R^{1}$$
-CH-CH<sub>2</sub>-NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub> [Ij]

25

or its salt, in the above formulas,  $R^{1}$ ,  $R^{2}$ , n and a heavy solid line are each as defined above, and  $R_b^3$  is an N-protective group.

30

7. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of claim 1, as an active ingredient, in association with a pharmaceutically acceptable, substantially non-toxic carrier or excipient.

- 8. A compound of claim 1 for use as a medicament.
- 9. A method for therapeutic treatment and/or prevention of dysuria, spasm or hyperanakinesia which comprises administering the effective amount of a compound of claim 1 to human beings or animals.
- 10. Use of a compound of claim 1 for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment and/or prevention of dysuria, spasm or hyperanakinesia in human beings or animals.

15

10

20

25

30

			International Application No	
	ICATION OF SUBJ		n symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>6</sup>	
	o International Patent 5 CO7C217/ CO7D213/		C07C215/64;	C07C229/46
II. FIELDS	SEARCHED			
		Minimum Doc	umentation Searched?	
Classification	on System		Classification Symbols	
Int.Cl.	5	C07C		
		Documentation Searched of to the Extent that such Documen	her than Minimum Documentation hts are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>8</sup>	
III. DOCUN		ED TO BE RELEVANT 9		Relevant to Claim No.13
Category o	Citation of D	ocument, 11 with indication, where appro	opriate, of the relevant passages 12	Relevant to Claim 140.13
X	vol. 11 pages 1	OF MEDICINAL CHEMIST , no. 5, 1968, WASHIN 000 - 1008 ET AL. '.betaAdren	GTON US	1
	agents. and N-a 2-amino	I. Pronethalol and rralkyl derivatives of -1-(2-naphthyl)ethanomples 59,60	elated N-alkyl	
X	EP,A,O 29 June	273 017 (SIGMA-TAU IN 1988	DUSTRIE)	1
A	22 Augu cited i	383 686 (MIDY) st 1990 n the application ims 10-18; examples 1	.3-18	1-10
	555		-/	
"A" doc	I categories of cited do cument defining the go nsidered to be of partic	eneral state of the art which is not	"T" later document published after th or priority date and not in conflic cited to understand the principle invention	et with the application but
fill "L" doc whi	ng date :ument which may thro	lished on or after the international ow doubts on priority claim(s) or the publication date of another eason (as specified)	"X" document of particular relevance; cannot be considered novel or can involve an inventive step "Y" document of particular relevance; cannot be considered to involve a	nnot be considered to ; the claimed invention in inventive step when the
"O" doe oth "P" doe	cument referring to ar ter means	oral disclosure, use, exhibition or	document is combined with one of ments, such combination being of in the art.  "&" document member of the same page.	or more other such docu- byious to a person skilled
IV. CERTI				
		the International Search	Date of Mailing of this Internation	nal Search Report
	•	PRIL 1993	1 1. 05. 93	
Internationa	N Searching Authority	CAN PATENT OFFICE	Signature of Authorized Officer SEUFERT G.H.	
	LUNUTI			

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (January 1985)

	International Application No	
III. DOCUMI	ENTS CONSIDERED E RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SEC	Relevant to Claim No.
Category °	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Records
A	EP,A,O 211 721 (MIDY) 25 February 1987 cited in the application see abstract; claims	1-10
P,X	EP,A,O 499 755 (MIDY) 26 August 1992 see page 10, line 55 - page 11, line 18; claims 1-6	1,6,10

## ANNEX TO THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT ON INTERNATIONAL PATENT APPLICATION NO.

JP 9300113 SA 69330

This annex lists the patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report. The members are as contained in the European Patent Office EDP file on

The European Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information. 26/04/93

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date	
EP-A-0273017	29-06-88	DE-A- JP-A- US-A-	3781783 63190858 5047433	22-10-92 08-08-88 10-09-91	
EP-A-0383686	22-08-90	FR-A- CA-A- JP-A-	2643076 2009992 3014548	17-08-90 14-08-90 23-01-91	
EP-A-0211721	25-02-87	FR-A- FR-A- AU-B- AU-A-	2584712 2598410 596976 5988986	16-01-87 13-11-87 24-05-90 15-01-87	
		CA-A- JP-A- US-A-	1260493 62063549 4707497	26-09-89 20-03-87 17-11-87	
EP-A-0499755	26-08-92	AU-A- EP-A- JP-A-	1101792 0500443 5065254	20-08-92 26-08-92 19-03-93	

For more details about this annex : see Official Journal of the European Patent Office, No. 12/82

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)